TEACHER.AC
PRIMARY SEVEN ENGLISH LESSON NOTES

TOPICS TO BE COVERED:

1. PUNCTUATION:
   a) Capital/ Upper case / Block letters
   b) A comma
   c) A full stop
   d) A question mark
   e) An exclamation mark
   f) Quotation marks or inverted commas
   g) An apostrophe
   h) A colon
   i) A semi colon
   j) A hyphen
   k) A dash
   l) A slash
   m) The brackets

2. SCHOOL HOLIDAYS;
   a) Holiday plans.
   b) Holiday activities.

3. LETTER WRITING;
   a) Informal/Personal/Social/Friendly letters.
   b) Formal/official/business letters.

4. EXAMINATIONS;
a) Preparation for examinations.
b) Sitting examinations.

5. ELECTRONIC MEDIA;
   a) Radio/Television.
   b) Other electronic media.

6. RIGHTS, RESPONSIBILITIES AND FREEDOM;
   a) Children’s rights and responsibilities.
   b) Animal needs and freedom.

7. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION;
   a) Importance of environmental protection.
   b) Ways of protecting the environment.

8. CEREMONIES;
   a) Marriage.
   b) Funeral.

9. GENERAL REVIEW OF OTHER ENGLISH PARTS OF SPEECH;
   a) Nouns.
   b) Pronouns.
   c) Adjectives.
   d) Verbs.
   e) Adverbs.
   f) Tenses.
   g) Voices.
   h) Speeches.
   i) Conjunctions.
   j) Similes.
   k) Proverbs.
   l) Idiomatic expressions (Idioms)

TOPIC 1: PUNCTUATION:
Definition;
- Punctuation is a way of writing a language using marks or signs called punctuation marks.

PUNCTUATION MARKS:
- Punctuation marks are special signs used when writing a language in order to make it clearer in meaning and simpler to read/interpret.

PUNCTUATION MARKS AND THEIR USES:
1. **Capital/Uppercase/Block letters:**

   A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z

   a) A capital letter is used at the beginning of a new sentence.

   **Example:**
   - Men should work and support their families.

   b) A capital letter is used to start proper nouns.

   **Example:**
   - Malaika left for Nairobi on Friday.

   c) A capital letter is used when writing “I” as a personal pronoun in any position of a sentence i.e. at the beginning, inside or at the end of the sentence.

   **Examples:**
   - I was told to come early for the exams.
   - When the teacher asked me, I told him the truth.
   - I am in Primary Seven, aren’t I?

   d) A capital letter is used to introduce a direct speech.

   **Examples:**
   Anna’s father said, “The books were bought yesterday”.

   e) Capital letters are also used when writing all pronouns referring to God.

   **Examples:**
   Everything was created by God and He decided all of them to be in His image because nothing is above Him.

   f) Capital letters are used when writing titles of books, people, songs, poems, stories etc.

   **Examples:**
- President Yoweri Kaguta Museveni is the head of the Republic of Uganda.
- The Oxford Advanced Learner’s Dictionary is a very essential book for learners.

**g) Capital letters are also used when writing initials of people, companies, or organizations.**

**Examples:**
- J.W.Z
- UWESO
- UNEB

**h) A capital letter can also be used on the first word of every line of a verse.**

**2. A COMMA (,)**

**a) A comma is used in question and answer tags.**

**Examples:**
- I am in Primary Seven this year, aren’t I?
- Did she write the examinations?

i) Yes, she did.

ii) No, she didn’t.

**b) A comma is used in direct speeches to separate the speech tag or reporting part from the actual quoted words.**

**Example:**
- Allen said, “I must pass my exams.”

**c) A comma is used to separate a relative clause from the main clause.**

**Example:**
- The woman, whose child was murdered, wept painfully.

**d) A comma is also used when writing figures with more than three digits.**

**Examples:**
- 1,000
- 35,000
- 241,000
- 6,000,000

**e) A comma is used in addresses, salutations or greetings and subscriptions or conclusions in letter writing.**

**Examples:**
- Yudesi Primary School,
  P.O Box 26708,
Kampala.

ii) Dear Sir,

iii) Yours faithfully,

f) A comma is used to separate certain words and phrases.
   **Examples:**
   - Therefore,
   - However,
   - Nevertheless,
   - On the other hand,
   - On the one hand,
   etc.

g) A comma is used to separate phrases or clauses joined by conjunctions used at the beginning of those clauses.
   **Examples:**
   Although it rained heavily, Destiny went to school.

h) A comma is used to separate words written in series.
   **Example:**
   - I went to the market and bought tomatoes, onions, beef, curry powder, soap, bananas and salt.

i) A comma is also used to set off a name of a person addressed.
   **Example:**
   - Why don’t you follow us, Peter?

j) A comma is used in participle clauses.
   **Example:**
   - On hearing that he had passed in division one, Bunjo screamed loudly.
   - Deceived by his friends, Sekabira lost his fingers in the dog’s mouth.
   - Having eaten her breakfast, Vanessa ran to school.

k) A comma is used when writing the items of a date.
   **Example:**
   - Friday, 17th June, 2014.

3. **A FULL STOP (.)**

a) A full stop is used at the end of a complete statement which is not a question or an exclamation.
   **Example:**
   - As soon as I got a pen, I started writing.

b) A full stop is used in initials of people’s names.
Examples:
c) A full stop is used with abbreviations.
   Example:
   Dr. – Doctor
d) A full stop is also used on top of small letters “i” and “j”.
   Example:
   - The milk is in the jug.

4. A QUESTION MARK (?)
a) A question mark is used at the end of a direct interrogative or questioning sentence.
   Example:
   - Did you eat any mango yesterday?

5. AN EXCLAMATION MARK (!)
a) An exclamation mark is used at the end of an exclamatory statement expressing surprise / wonder, shout admiration, fear, pleasure, pain, sudden feelings, strong emotions or interjections.
   Example:
   - What a beautiful woman I have!

6. QUOTATION MARKS OR INVERTED COMMAS (‘ ’) OR (“ ”)
a) Quotation marks or inverted commas are used to enclose the actual words said by somebody (direct speech).
   Example:
   - “I shall come tomorrow,” said Anna.
b) Quotation marks or inverted commas are used to specify certain words or names which are not accepted as true or normal English words.
   Example:
   - I was served with “Katogo” at Tamutamu Restaurant.
c) Quotation marks or inverted commas are also used to show titles of books, plays, poems, articles etc written in small or the lower case letters.
   Examples:
   “A Narrow Escape” is the title of the story.

7. AN APOSTROPHE (’)
a) An apostrophe is used to show possession or ownership of nouns.
   Example:
- Bukirwa’s pen got lost.

b) An apostrophe is used in contractions.

**Example:**
- cannot – can’t

c) An apostrophe is also used to form plural forms of letters, signs and figures.

**Examples:**
- N’s
- +’s
- 5’s

8. **A COLON (:)**

a) A colon is used to introduce a long quotation.

**Example:**
- The teacher said: “As I was coming to school this morning, I saw a monster that jumped onto a young boy and swallowed him up:”

b) A colon is used in front of an introduction of long lists of series of things.

**Example:**
- Uganda has some of the following districts: Iganga, Kampala, Wakiso, Mukono, Jinja, Mpigi, Kayunga, Masaka, Kasese, Luwero etc.

c) A colon is used to show ratios.

**Example:**
- 3:5:4:7

9. **A SEMI COLON (;)**

a) A semi colon is used as a strong comma to separate names, titles and figures which are just listed.

**Examples:**
- The following people are useful to our nation: the president; the ministers; the teachers; the nurses and the lawyers.

b) A semi colon is also used to replace or avoid using words like; “and” or “but” in a sentence.

**Example:**
- She looked for her pen but she did not find it.
- She looked for her pens; she did not find it.

10. **A HYPHEN (-)**

a) A hyphen is used to join compound words.

**Example:**
11. **A SLASH ( / )**
   - A slash is used to separate letters, numbers or words in writing.
   **Example:**
   - Boys / males are naturally strong.

12. **A DASH ( _____ )**
   - A dash is used to show an incomplete sentence.
   **Example:**
   - Ketra is ___________ than Eddy.

13. **THE BRACKETS ( ), { }**
   a) Brackets are used to show sets.
   **Example:**
   - A _____ of cattle was seen crossing the valley. (had, hard, herd, heard)
   - Set M = {2, 3, 5, 7, 11}.

**Punctuate the following sentences correctly:**

1. entebbe guitar singers with their play omuzira mubazira are going to the stage kaberamaido
2. the lc 1 chairperson in his address said we shant accept people who arent well disciplined therefore members always report such cases to the defence secretary
3. the following will attend the head teacher the senior woman teacher the heads of department the prefects
4. after all possible calculations the money was in the following amounts
   23500 945 154555 72135 99950
5. uganda is making a supreme law of all laws constitution so that it can make people lead a peaceful life
6. the oc would like to see the following persons mawaya kavuyo malemesa muwanga mubbi
7. what lesson do you learn from jesus teachings
8. how handsome kiiza looks
9. for god so loved the world that he gave his only son jesus christ and that whoever believes in him shall have eternal life in heaven
10. ethiopia uganda drc gabon south sudan are land locked countries

**Give unpunctuated texts in comprehension**

**SCHOOL HOLIDAYS:**
**HOLIDAY PLANS AND ACTIVITIES:**
** VOCABULARY DEVELOPMENT:**
Learn the pronunciation, spellings and the meanings of the following words and use them in sensible sentences to show you have understood them.

1. **school:**
   A place where children go to learn or to study.
   
   **Sentence practice:**
   Yudesi is a very good school.

2. **holiday**
   A period of time when somebody is away from home or school.
   
   **Sentence practice:**
   Benita always goes to the village of a holiday.

3. **plan:**
   An arrangement or a way or a series to actions that you need to take in order to achieve something.
   
   **Sentence practice:**
   My plan is to read hard in order to score aggregate four.

4. **vacation:**
   A very long holiday between a term when a university or college is closed.
   
   **Sentence practice:**
   Nahwera will go for a church camp during her P.7 vacation.

5. **traveler/traveler**
   Someone who is travelling or who often travels.
   
   **Sentence practice:**
   My father is a traveler.

6. **remedy**
   A way or an activity of improving a difficult situation.
   
   **Sentence practice:**
   Our teacher gave us a remedy for hardworking.

7. **relative:**
   A member of your family.
   
   **Sentence practice:**
   Our relative is a fashion designer.

8. **pen pal/pen friend**
   A person with whom you make friendship by writing letters.
**Sentence practice:**
My pen pal always sends me gifts in the third term holiday.

9. **up – country:**
An area of a country that is not near large towns.

**Sentence practice:**
My sister went up – country.

10. **town (urban):**
A place with many houses/buildings, shops, schools, hospitals, offices and where many people live or work.

**Sentence practice:**
I spend most of the time in town during holidays.

11. **village (rural):**
A small settlement in a country area.

**Sentence practice:**
I will go to the village in my vacation.

12. **birthday:**
The anniversary of the day on which a person was born.

**Sentence practice:**
I celebrated my birthday at my aunt’s place.

13. **programme/program**
A list of a planned series of events.

**Sentence practice:**
Visiting my grandmother is one of my programmes.

14. **concert:**
A public performance of music.

**Sentence practice:**
Our school is going to have a concert during the holiday.

15. **house work**
Work done in a house e.g. cleaning and cooking.

**Sentence practice:**
I was sent to do a lot of house work last holiday.

16. **trip**
A short journey or outing.

**Sentence practice:**
My cousin and I will go for a trip during our vacation.

17. **report card**
A written statement about the work of a student at school, college etc

**Sentence practice:**

I did not receive my report card

18. **chores**
A tedious or difficult task

**Sentence practice:**

Chores are tiresome.

19. **routine**
A regular or fixed way of doing things.

**Sentence practice:**

It is a routine to do house work.

20. **bash**
A large party or celebration

**Sentence practice**

We had a bash in my aunt's house.

21. **fare**
The money you pay to travel on a bus, train, ship or air craft.

**Sentence practice**

The bus fare was very expensive.

22. **bank pay – in slip**
A written record showing how much money you have paid in a bank.

**Sentence practice:**

I gave my bank pay – in slip to the bursar.

23. **teacher:**
Someone who teaches people at a school or college.

**Sentence practice**

Our teacher has gone for his vacation.

24. **journey**
Going from one place to another.

**Sentence practice:**

My father went for a journey.

25. **pupil**
A person who is learning at school.

**Sentence practice:**

There are few pupils at school.

26. **student:**
A person who is studying at a college or university.

**Sentence practice:**
There are many students at that university.

27. **visitor**
Someone who is staying visiting a place.

**Sentence practice:**
We should always greet visitors.

28. **host**
Some one who has guests and looks after them.

**Sentence practice:**
The host was very kind.

29. **hostess**
A woman who has guests and looks after them.

**Sentence practice:**
The hostess was rude.

30. **break off:**
The end

**Sentence practice:**
We shall break off for holidays in April.

31. **prepare**
To make yourself ready to do something or for something that you expect to happen.

**Sentence practice:**
I had no time to prepare for the trip.

32. **pick**
To chose somebody or something from a group of people or things.

**Sentence practice:**
My father went to pick my report card.

33. **travel**
To go from one place to another especially over a long distance.

**Sentence practice:**
I will travel to Soroti

34. **end:**
To finish or stop.

**Sentence practice**
The vacation is going to end tomorrow.

35. **remedial**
   Intended to help, improve or correct something.
   
   **Sentence practice:**
   “Where is the remedial exercise”? asked the teacher.

36. **vacate**
   To leave a building especially so that somebody else can use it.
   
   **Sentence practice:**
   They should vacate the house.

37. **commence**
   To begin or start.
   
   **Sentence practice:**
   The journey will commence at noon.

38. **board**
   To get on a ship, plane or train.
   
   **Sentence practice:**
   We boarded the ship to Mombasa.

39. **study**
   The activity of learning or gaining knowledge.
   
   **Sentence practice:**
   We study during holidays.

40. **farm**
   An area of land used for growing crops or keeping animals.
   
   **Sentence practice:**
   We visited the farm last holidays.

41. **tour**
   A journey made for pleasure during which several towns, countries etc are visited.
   
   **Sentence practice:**
   We went for a tour in Australia.

42. **camp**
   A place where young people go on holiday or vacation and take part in various activities.
   
   **Sentence practice:**
   We shall go for a camp.

43. **visit**
To go and spend time in a place or with someone.

**Sentence practice:**
Which countries did you visit last year?

44. **begin**
To start doing something.

**Sentence practice:**
I will begin my journey at noon.

45. **show**
To be or make something available for the public to see.

**Sentence practice:**
We went for a show.

46. **cook**
To prepare food for eating using heat.

**Sentence practice:**
I learnt how to cook.

47. **revise**
To prepare for attest by studying books and notes from your lessons.

**Sentence practice:**
I revised my books during holidays.

48. **enjoy**
To get pleasure from something.

**Sentence practice:**
I enjoyed the show.

49. **nice**
Pleasant, attractive or enjoyable

**Sentence practice:**
Our vacation was very nice.

50. **interesting**
Attracting your attention because it is special exciting or unusual.

**Sentence practice:**
The concert was interesting.

51. **exciting**
Causing great interest or excitement.

**Sentence practice:**
The journey was exciting.

52. **short**
Measuring or covering a small length or distance.

**Sentence practice**
The journey was short.

53. **long**
Measuring or covering a great length or distance

**Sentence practice**
The journey was long.

54. **sort**
Arrange things in groups or in particular order according to their types etc

**Sentence practice**
Did you sort your clothes?

Guided dialogue; (Monitor English course bk 7 pg 48)
Passage; (Fountain English bk 7 pg 38 – 40)
Guided composition; (Fountain English bk 7 pg 42) etc

**LETTER WRITING**

**VOCABULARY DEVELOPMENT**

Learn the pronunciation, spellings and the meanings of the following words and use them in meaningful sentences to show that you have understood them.

1. **letter:**
A message written down or printed on a paper and usually put in an envelope and sent to another person

**Sentence practice:**
Our teacher taught us how to write a friendly letter.

2. **address:**
The details where somebody lives or works and where letters can be sent.

**Sentence practice:**
I was told to write my address on the letter.

3. **envelope:**
A flat paper container in which letters are sealed and sent somewhere.

**Sentence practice:**
I bought a cheap envelope.

4. **card**
A small piece of hard paper or plastic with some information.

**Sentence practice:**
My uncle gave me a success card.

5. **occasion:**
A special ceremony or function or celebration.

**Sentence practice:**
John was invited to the occasion.

6. **party:**
A feast or a social occasion

**Sentence practice:**
Mary sent me an invitation letter to her birthday party.

7. **guest:**
A visitor or a person who is invited to a particular ceremony.

**Sentence practice:**
The guest of honour attended the ceremony.

8. **visitor:**
A person who visits a place or another person.

**Sentence practice:**
Did you greet the visitors?

9. **function**
A social event or official ceremony.

**Sentence practice:**
Where will the function take place.

10. **ceremony.**
A public or religious occasion that involves a series of events.

**Sentence practice:**
Many people attended the introduction ceremony.

11. **host**
A man who invites guests to a meal or party.

**Sentence practice:**
The host was very kind.

12. **hostess**
A woman who invites guests to a meal or party.

**Sentence practice:**
The hostess was rude.

13. **friend**
A person you like and who likes you too.
**Sentence practice:**
My friend will send me a letter tomorrow.

14. **sender**
A person who sends a letter or something.

**Sentence practice:**
The letter didn’t have the senders address.

15. **writer:**
A person who writes a letter or something.

**Sentence practice:**
The writer has a good handwriting.

16. **addresser:**
A person who writes or sends a letter to an addressee.

**Sentence practice:**
The addresser doesn’t know the features of an informal letter.

17. **receiver**
A person who receives a letter something.

**Sentence practice:**
Did the receiver read through the letter?

18. **recipient:**
A person who receives something.

**Sentence practice:**
Did the recipient get the token?

19. **addressee**
A person to whom a letter is addressed.

**Sentence practice**
The letter the addressee received was not his.

20. **reply**
Something to answer somebody.

**Sentence practice**
I wrote a reply to that letter.

21. **aerogram/aerogramme**
A sheet of light paper that can be folded and sent by air as a letter.

**Sentence practice:**
The aerogram was torn into pieces

22. **mail**
The official system of sending and delivering letter, packages etc
Sentence practice
Don’t forget the mail of that letter.

23. referee
A person who gives information about your character and ability usually in a letter.
Sentence practice:
The chairman LCI acted as my referee when I applied for a new job.

24. conclusion:
The end of something such as a writing.
Sentence practice:
John did not write the conclusion on his letter.

25. summary
A short statement that gives only the main points of something but not its details
Sentence practice:
Write those sentences in summery.

26. sign:
A mark or symbol that stands for something in a letter.
Sentence practice:
Never use signs when writing a letter.

27. signature:
Somebody's name written in their own particular way in letters.
Sentence practice:
You should write your signature on the formal letter.

28. parcel
Something wrapped in a paper so that it can be sent by mail.
Sentence practice:
Did you mail the parcel?

29. package
A box or bag etc in which things are wrapped or packed.
Sentence practice:
I received the package.

30. telegram
A printed message sent by a telegraph.
Sentence practice:
Did you receive the telegram?
31. **stamp**
   A small piece of paper with a design on it that you buy and stick on an envelope or parcel.
   **Sentence practice:**
   The stamps were very much.

32. **reference:**
    a heading or title or main subject of an official letter.
   **Sentence practice**
   The reference wasn't clear.

33. **success**
    Something that you achieve
   **Sentence practice**
   His success was due to his hard work.

34. **introduction**
    The beginning of something new
   **Sentence practice:**
   The introduction of the letter was interesting.

35. **preamble:**
    A statement of the beginning of a book or a speech explaining what it is all about.
   **Sentence practice:**
   The preamble wasn’t clear.

36. **paragraph**
    Apart or piece of writing starting on a new line and containing one main idea.
   **Sentence practice:**
   She forgot to skip a paragraph when she was writing her letter.

37. **body**
    The part of a letter that contains only the main ideas.
   **Sentence practice:**
   The first paragraph should prepare the way for the body of essay.

38. **relatives:**
    The member of your family
   **Sentence practice:**
   All my relatives attended my introduction ceremony.
39. **date:**
   A particular day of the month or year usually given in figures.
   **Sentence practice:**
   What is the date today?

40. **purpose:**
    The main of intension of something.
    **Sentence practice:**
    What is the purpose of writing this letter?

41. **reason:**
    A cause or an explanation for something which has happened or that has been done.
    **Sentence practice:**
    Tell me the reason why you wrote that letter.

42. **post office:**
    A place where you can buy stamps, send or receive letters.
    **Sentence practice:**
    I bought those stamps from the post office.

43. **carbon copy:**
    A copy of a document, letter etc.
    **Sentence practice:**
    I made two carbon copies of that letter.

44. **letter box:**
    A narrow opening in a door or wall through which mail is delivered.
    **Sentence practice:**
    The letter box is full of mails.

45. **letter slot**
    A narrow opening in a door or box through which letters are dropped or delivered.
    **Sentence practice:**
    Letters slots always open easily.

46. **post box:**
    A box into which you can put letters to be sent by post.
    **Sentence practice:**
    Did you put the letter on the post box?

47. **first name:**
A name that came from your parents and comes before your family name.

**Sentence practice:**
My first name is Joshua.

48. **last name/surname**
Your family/clan/ancestral name.

**Sentence practice:**
My last name is Ofamba.

49. **maiden name:**
A woman’s family name before marriage.

**Sentence practice:**
My mother’s maiden name is Nyafwono.

50. **salutation:**
The words that are used in a letter to address the person you are writing to.

  e.g.  Dear Sir,  Dear Madam,  Dear Joan etc

**Sentence practice:**
Dear Sir is a common form of salutation in formal letters.

51. **advertisement:**
A notice, a picture or film telling people about a job, a service or a product.

**Sentence practice:**
There weren't many advertisements in the newspaper.

52. **application:**
A formal request for something such as a job, a vacancy, a service, goods or permission.

**Sentence practice:**
Mubiru's application for a vacancy in Senior One was addressed to the head teacher of Makerere college school.

53. **vacancy:**
A place.

**Sentence practice:**
All candidates will apply for vacancies in senior one next year.

54. **draft:**
A piece of writing that is not yet in its finished form.

**Sentence practice:**
I have made a draft for the letter.

55. **Sir:**
A title used sometimes when speaking politely to a man.

**Sentence practice:**
Can I help you, Sir?

56. **Madam:**
A title sometimes used when speaking or writing politely to a woman.

**Sentence practice:**
Excuse me Madam, can I talk to you?

57. **Mr.**
It is used as a title before a man’s name.

**Sentence practice:**
Good morning, Mr. Muwanguzi.

58. **Mrs.**
It is used as a title before a name for a married woman.

**Sentence practice:**
Did she attend Mrs. Ddembe’s wedding?

59. **Ms.**
It is used as a title before the family name of a woman who may or may not be married.

**Sentence practice:**
I enjoy writing letters to Ms. Njobi Hilder.

60. **Miss.**
It is used as a title before a name of a girl or woman who is not yet married.

**Sentence practice:**
Miss Kisha will receive your letter next week.

61. **Hon.**
The shot form of Honorable or Honorary.

**Sentence practice:**
She is an Hon. Member of parliament.

62. **Dr.**
The short form of Doctor.

**Sentence practice:**
Dr Paul is a surgeon.

63. **Rev./Revd.**
The shot form of reverends.

**Sentence practice:**
Rev. Fred has been preaching.
64. **professor:**
A teacher at the highest rank in a university.

**Sentence practice:**
Mr. Matovu is a professor at Nkumba University.

65. **e-mail**
The short form of electronic mail.

**Sentence practice:**
My e-mail address is krichardnelson@gmail.com.

66. **internet:**
A computer network that allows people all over the world to send and receive messages.

**Sentence practice:**
Do you know how to use the internet?

67. **directory:**
A book that contains list of people with their telephone numbers and address.

**Sentence practice.**
The directory is being used by Sarah.

68. **postage:**
The money that is paid to post a letter.

**Sentence practice:**
I didn’t pay the postage fee.

69. **apology.**
A statement that you make to show that you are sorry for having done something wrong.

**Sentence practice:**
Andrew wrote an apology letter to Nathan.

70. **band:**
A small group of musicians who play popular music together.

**Sentence practice:**
Jamirah is a singer in the band.

71. **banquet:**
A formal meal for a large number of people usually for a special occasion at which speeches are often made.

**Sentence practice:**
My parents organized a banquet at Serena Hotel.

72. **bouquet:**
A bunch of flowers organized in an attractive way so that it can be carried on a ceremony and presented as a gift.

**Sentence practice:**
The little girl presented a large bouquet of flowers to the princess.

73. **time:**
A particular moment or period when things are existing or happening.

**Sentence practice:**
There was a time when I agreed with you to attend my birthday.

74. **feast:**
A large or special meal especially for a lot of people when celebrating something.

**Sentence practice:**
Abdu and Annie invited me for their wedding feast.

75. **celebration:**
A special event that people organize in order to celebrate something.

**Sentence practice:**
We shall organize a birthday celebration for Ronald.

76. **reception:**
An area inside/at the entrance of a hotel, an office or any building where guests or visitors go when they arrive.

**Sentence practice:**
We arranged to meet at the reception at 6:30p.m.

77. **receptionist:**
A person whose job is to deal with people arriving or telephoning a hotel, an office building or a doctor’s surgery.

**Sentence practice:**
The receptionist was very polite.

78. **chief guest/guest – of – honour:**
The most important invited guest to an event/ceremony.

**Sentence practice:**
The chief guest arrived late at the function.
The guest of honour was smartly dressed.

79. **invitation:**
A spoken or written request to somebody to attend a function / event / ceremony / occasion.

**Sentence practice:**
Turyaguma received an invitation to Ketra’s wedding.

**80. invitation card:**
A small piece of hard paper or plastic with information on it inviting somebody to a social event.

**Sentence practice:**
Daphine sent many invitation cards to her friends.

**81. messenger:**
A person who gives / delivers to somebody / people as a job.

**Sentence practice:**
The office messenger is absent today.

**82. seal:**
A piece of wax or paper that is placed across the opening of something such as a letter / box and has to be broken before the letter or box can be opened.

**Sentence practice:**
He broke the wax seal and unrolled the paper.

**83. master of ceremonies / mistress of ceremonies:**
A person who introduces guests, entertainers and items of a program at a function.

**Sentence practice:**
The master of ceremony was very loud.
The mistress of ceremony was smartly dressed.

**84. graduation:**
The act of successfully completing a university degree or studies.

**Sentence practice:**
Mechanical engineering was my first job after graduation.

**85. graduate:**
A person who has attained a university degree.

**Sentence practice:**
Caroline was a graduate last year.

**86. classmate:**
A person who is / was in the same class with you at school / college.
**Sentence practice:**
My classmates are very stubborn.

87. **applicant:**
A person who makes a formal request for something especially a job.

**Sentence practice:**
There were over five hundred applicants for the job.

88. **advert:**
The short form of advertisement.

**Sentence practice:**
The Pepsi cola advert is very funny.

89. **block method:**
A straight sided form of writing.

**Sentence practice:**
She used the block method to write the letter.

90. **indent method:**
The space made on the surface of something.

**Sentence practice:**
Did you use the indent method to write the letter.

91. **regrets:**
A feeling of sadness or disappointment one has because of something that has happened or something that has been done or not done.

**Sentence practice:**
I have no regrets about the postponement of my graduation party.

92. **venue/place:**
A particular point or area or part where people are to meet for an organized event e.g. a concert, conference or sporting event.

**Sentence practice:**
The band will be playing at twenty venues.
This would be a good place for the picnic.

93. **dear:**
An expression used as a greeting at the beginning of a letter before the name or title or the addressee.

**Sentence practice:**
 미래 Trever, may you send me that book?
 **Dear Madam, I would like to talk to you.**
94. affectionate
Expressing caring feelings and love for somebody.
Sentence practice:
My affectionate cousin promised to visit me next Sunday.

95. ordinary.
Not unusual/different in anyway.
Sentence practice:
His letter was ordinary compared to others.

96. faithful:
Always staying with and supporting a person, organization or belief.
Sentence practice:
Joan is always faithful to her husband.

97. sincere:
Showing that you really feel or mean something.
Sentence practice:
Henry is sincere to Clever.

98. personal:
Belonging to one particular person.
Sentence practice:
That letter is personal.

99. friendly.
Kind and pleasant.
Sentence practice:
He is friendly.

100. Social
Being connected with society and the way it is organized.
Sentence practice:
He has a social behaviour.

101. informal:
Not relaxed, friendly or suitable for an unrelaxed occasion.
Sentence practice:
Jerome sent me an informal letter.

102. formal:
Some thing relaxed and friendly or suitable for a relaxed occasion.
Sentence practice:
He wrote a formal letter.
103. **official:**
Connected with the position of something.

**Sentence practice:**
Did you send an official letter to her?

104. **welcome:**
Being friendly to a person when they have arrived.

**Sentence practice:**
They were given a worm welcome.

105. **true:**
Based on real facts and not by imagination.

**Sentence practice:**
It is true that Matovu is married to Daphne.

106. **occasional:**
Happening or done sometimes but not often.

**Sentence practice:**
She works for us on an occasional basis.

107. **casual:**
Not showing much care or thought.

**Sentence practice:**
It is just a casual remark.

108. **Genuine/authentic:**
Real or exactly what it looks to be.

**Sentence practice:**
Baker bought a genuine art book.

109. **honest:**
Always telling the truth and never stealing or cheating.

**Sentence practice:**
Kevin is always honest to his wife.

110. **written:**
Expressed in writing rather than speech.

**Sentence practice:**
Eva submitted a written apology to Ronald.

111. **invite:**
To ask or request somebody to come and attend a social event.

**Sentence practice:**
Vanessa invited Vincent to her birthday party.
112. **sign:**
   To write your name on a letter or any document showing that you wrote it or agreed with it.

**Sentence practice:**
She signed on the letter that she sent to the chairperson.

113. **inform:**
   To give somebody some information about something especially in an official way.

**Sentence practice:**
Logan will inform you more about the wedding.

114. **ask:**
   To request or put a question or make an inquiry from somebody in order to find out some information.

**Sentence practice:**
Albert will ask you to write to him.

115. **thank:**
   To tell somebody that you are grateful.

**Sentence practice:**
Thank you for writing to me.

116. **edit:**
   To make a book, newspaper or magazine ready i.e easy for reading.

**Sentence practice:**
She will edit the newspaper tomorrow.

117. **advertise:**
   To put information in a newspaper, a television a magazine, a picture on a wall in order to parade people to buy something or interest them in a job etc.

**Sentence practice:**
They advertised their wedding on a television.

118. **stamp:**
   To print some words or a design and the date by pressing a stamp onto a surface.

**Sentence practice:**
Did you stamp the letter?

119. **sign in:**
   To write your name to show that you have arrived at a hotel, club etc.
**Sentence practice:**
The minister has signed in at the hotel.

120. **sign out:**
To write your name to show that you have left a hotel, club etc.

**Sentence practice:**
She will sign out after eating food.

121. **post:**
To send a letter, parcel to someone by post.

**Sentence practice:**
I will post that letter tomorrow.

122. **welcome:**
To show that you are pleased when someone arrives.

**Sentence practice:**
They welcomed the visitors happily.

123. **take a seat:**
To sit on a chair or a bench.

**Sentence practice:**
He said that the seat was comfortable.

124. **seal:**
To close an envelope by sticking the edges of its opened altogether.

**Sentence practice:**
She didn’t seal the envelope.

125. **deliver:**
To send to the place requested or to the address intended.

**Sentence practice:**
Amanda will deliver the letter to her.

126. **submit:**
To give in a plan, a document to an organization so that it can be studied and considered.

**Sentence practice:**
I submitted my report last week.

127. **Re:**
a preposition used at the beginning of an official letter.

**Sentence practice:**
Re: APPLICATION FOR A VACANCY IN SENIOR ONE:
128. **pp**
   A short form of pages.
   Used to mean on behalf of.
   **Sentence practice:**
   She wrote the letter on behalf of the doctor.

129. **since:**
   From the particular time that is in the past until a later time in the past or now.
   **Sentence practice:**
   I have been writing to my wife since we got married.

130. **through (thru)**
   Seeking authority from one person / level to another.
   **Sentence practice:**
   I wrote the letter to the head teacher through the director of studies.

**INFORMAL/FRIENDLY/SOCIAL/PERSOAL LETTERS:**
These are letters written to any member of your family or close friends.

**Parts/elements/features of an informal/friendly/social/ personal letters.**

1. The writer's/sender's addresser's address.
2. The date.
   **Forms or writing the date.**
   ◆ Thursday, 8\textsuperscript{th} May, 2014.
   ◆ 8\textsuperscript{th} May, 2014.
   ◆ Thursday, May 8, 2014.
   ◆ May, 8, 2014.
   ◆ 08/05/2014.
   ◆ 08.05.2014.
   ◆ 08 – 05 – 2014.
3. The salutation.
   **Examples:**
   ◆ Dear cousin,
   ◆ Dear Brother,
   ◆ Dear Anabella,
Dear Rowena,
Dear Simon, etc

4. The greeting.

**Examples:**
- How are you nowadays?
- It is interesting to write to you my dear sister.
- Thank you for your letter I received last week.
- It was very kind of you to write to me.
- I am sorry for not writing to you before.

5. The body.
This is where we have the main message/ideas that the writer intends to convey or send to the receiver.

6. The conclusion/summary:
**Examples:**
- I am looking forward to seeing you then.
- We shall have more conversations when we meet.
- I hope to see you soon.
- I wish you the very best of luck.
- Send my regards to everyone at home.

7. The writer’s character/nature/description/closing remarks.
**Examples:**
- Your best friend,
- Your loving son,
- Yours affectionately,
- Yours ever,
- Yours truly, etc.

8. The writer’s name (small letters)
- The first name only.
  - Treasure
- The surname/last name only.
  - Nankya
- Both the first and last name.
Other important points to note when writing letters.

1. Language flow:
The ideas must be displayed in a smooth and correct language.

2. Spellings:
Only correct spellings must be written.

3. Tenses:
Relevant and appropriate tenses must be used.

4. Punctuation:
All parts/elements/items/features must be well punctuated.

5. Paragraphing:
All parts/elements/items/features/in the letter must be properly paragraphed.
We can either indent or block the items in the letter.

A SAMPLE OF AN INFORMAL/FRIENDLY/SOCIAL/PERSONAL LETTERS.
Read the sample of the letter below and in full sentences answer the questions about it carefully.

THE INDENTED PARAGRAPHING STYLE
Dear Flavia,

Thank you very much for your letter which I received yesterday.

I was pleased to learn that you won the letter writing competition in your school last term.

Congratulations! I kindly invite you to my sister’s wedding ceremony which will take place next Saturday.

Please send my greetings to your parents, sisters and brothers.

Yours loving friend,
Matayo Francis.
TORORO JUNIOR SCHOOL,
P.O BOX 3,
TORORO,

16/03/2013.

Dear Flavia,

Thank you very much for your letter which I received yesterday.

I was pleased to learn that you won the letter writing competition in your school last term.

Congratulations! I kindly invite you to my sister's wedding ceremony which will take place next Saturday.

Please send my greetings to your parents, sisters and brothers.

Yours loving friend,
Matayo Francis.

JUMBLED COMPOSITION:

The sentences below are in a wrong order. Rearrange them in a correct order to make a meaningful letter.

1. 25/05/2010
2. Your friend.
3. Kinono Primary school, P.O Box 100, Masaka
4. Obang Martin.
5. Dear Kenny,
6. Please, convey my regrets to all my friends.
7. I do wish you happy celebrations.
8. However, I am sorry, I won’t be able to attend, as I will be doing my exams.
9. Thank you very much for your kind invitation to the party.
10. I do hope that I shall be able to see you next week.
Solution table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WO</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CO</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CORRECT ORDER

1. Kinoni Primary School,  
   P.O Box 100,  
   Masaka.

2. 25/05/2010

3. Dear Kenny,

4. Thank you very much for your kind invitation to the party.

5. However, I am sorry, I won't be able to attend, as I will be doing my exams.

6. I do wish you happy celebrations.

7. Please, convey my regrets to all my friends.

8. I do think that I shall be able to see you next week.

9. Your friend,

10. Martin.

GUIDED COMPOSITION:
Study the letter below and then fill in the blank spaces with the correct words given in the list.

Lira Town Academy,  
P.O ______ 13,
Lira.

26/03/2014.

Hello ____________,

How are you over there nowadays? How is your class teacher, ____________? I hope you are also preparing to elect new prefects this term. By the way, did you apply or contest for any ____________, Dorah?

I have written this letter just to ____________ you to come and act as my polling assistant during the prefects’ elections that will take place next ____________ beginning at 9:00a.m at the Freedom Square in our school. I also request you to come along with your brother Darlington to serve as an election observer or ____________.

Please, ____________ to let me know if you will offer me that voluntary service.

I shall be ____________ to hear from you as soon as possible.

Yours ____________,
OKELLO PETERSON.

Friday, miss nassanga, grateful, invite, sincerely, reply, monitor, post, Box, Dorah

FREE LETTER COMPOSITION WRITING:
1. Using your school address, write a letter to your best friend in another school advising him/her to study hard and decide on the best occupation/career by the end of second term. In your letter, include the following: the reason for working hard, the benefit of hard work, your best occupation/career, your role model and your mentor.

**Plan:**
- The writer’s address.
- The date.
- Salutation.
- Greetings.
- Body (Main message).
- Advice for studying hard.
- Reasons for working hard.
- Benefit of hard work.
- Best occupation/career.
- Role model.
- Conclusion/summary.
- Closing remarks.
- Writer’s name (small letters).

**Fair copy:**
YUDESI PRIMARY SCHOOL,
27/05/2014.

Dearest Robert,

How are you nowadays? Let me hope you and your family are all fine.

I have written this letter to purposely advise you to study hard this year. When you work hard, you will always stand very high chances of getting better employment.

In most cases, when you have a good job, you will be capable of living a better standard together with your family members and close relatives.

In my opinion, I would love teaching as my best career because of Mr. Godfrey Male who was my teacher of English in Primary. Mr. Asiku Vincent has always helped me on how to study and become a teacher.

I hope to hear from you soon after receiving my letter.

Your best friend,
Nelson.

2. You are organizing to celebrate your twelfth birthday. Using your address, write a letter to your cousin inviting him/her to your birthday party. In your letter, tell him/her; the date, the place and the time when the function will begin and end. You can also tell him/her some of the items on the programme.

Plan:
- The writer’s address.
Dear Paul,

How are you nowadays? Let me hope you and your family are all fine.

I have written this letter to invite you to my birthday party which will take place on 29/06/2014. It will take place at Sherato Hotel. It will begin at 5:00 p.m. and end at 8:00 p.m.

There will be singing, dancing and a speech to conclude the function.

I will be grateful if you attend my birthday party.

Your cousin,
Joshua.

FORMAL/OFFICIAL/BUSINESS LETTERS:
These are letters written to an institution/firm/company or an individual in an institution/firm/company,

**Examples of formal/official/business letters:**

- Apology letters
- Application letters
- Letters of orders.
- Letters of subscription
- Letters of inquiry or request etc.

**Characteristics of formal/official/business letters:**

- Formal/business/official letters must be well planned and organized.
- They must be brief, precise and straight to the point.
- Only the importance or major reason must be put in them because they are official.
- Formal letters should be doubted and the people they are intended for because they are considered as legal documents.

**Parts/elements/features/items/components of a formal/official/business letters:**

1. The writer’s or sender’s or addresser’s address.
2. The date.
3. The receiver’s or recipient’s title and address.

**Example:**

THE HEAD TEACHER.
YUDESI SECONDARY SCHOOL,
P.O BOX 26708,
KAMPALA.

4. The salutation.

**Examples:**

- Dear Sir,
- Dear Madam,
- Dear Rev, Fr,
- Dear Rev Wilberforce,
- Dear Prof. Gilbert, etc
5. The subject/reason/reference (Re :)
   
   **Example:**
   - Re: APOLOGY.
   - Re: APPLICATION FOR A VACANCY IN SENIOR ONE.
   - Re: APPOINTMENT AS A HEAD TEACHER:
   - Re: ABSENCE FROM SCHOOL.
   - Re: A FRIENDLY DEBATE.
   - Re: TERMINATION OF SERVICE.

6. The body (main message/purpose)
7. The conclusion/summary.
8. The writer’s character/nature/description/closing remarks.
   
   **Examples:**
   **Yours faithfully,**
   - We use “Yours faithfully,” when we have addressed somebody as Dear Sir/Madam/Dear Rev, but not by their names.
   **Yours truly,**
   - We use “Yours truly,” either in informal or formal letters when we have addressed somebody by either their names or not.
   - Yours sincerely,
   - We use “Yours sincerely”, when we have addressed somebody by their name.

9. The writer’s/sender’s/addresser’s signature.
   
   **Examples:**
   - Nakibuuka Emily Laura Ssekabira.
   - N.E.L.S

10. The writer’s/sender’s/addresser’s full name in block or capital letters.
    
    **Examples:**
    - KICONCO EMILY KEMBABAZI.

A SAMPLE OF A FORMAL/OFFICIAL/BUSINESS LETTER:
Read the letter below very carefully and in full sentences answer the questions that follow.

KADIC HOSPITAL,
P.O BOX 360,
KAMPALA.

10/02/2014.

THE HEAD TEACHER,
NKUMBA PRIMARY SCHOOL,
P.O BOX 30,
ENTEBBE.

Dear Sir,

Re: APPLICATION FOR THE POST OF A SCHOOL NURSE:

I humbly apply for the post of a school nurse in your school which was advertised in the Monitor newspaper dated 31st January 2014.

I am a female Ugandan aged 32 years. I completed my Nursing Course two years ago from Makerere University and obtained a certificate in human health and medicine. At the moment, I am working with Kadic hospital Bukoto Branch.

Attached are the photocopies of my academic and professional testimonials.

In case of any more information about me, I refer you to;

1. Dr. George Kirya,
   Chairman, Uganda Medical Workers Association,
P.O BOX 1,
   KAMPALA.

2. Prof. Akampa Enid,
Registrar, Makerere University
P.O BOX 7,
KAMPALA.
I shall be very grateful if my application is considered.

Yours faithfully,
Bako Vanessa,
BAKO VANESSA.

EXAMINATIONS:

VOCABULARY DEVELOPMENT:

Learn the pronunciation, spellings and meanings of the following words and use them to make meaningful sentences.

1. **Examination:**
   A special test that is given to a candidate to find out how much he/she knows about a subject for a promotional purpose.

   **Sentence practice:**
   We sat for our beginning of term examinations last week.

2. **timetable:**
   A list or chart showing the time at which a particular examination will be written or done.

   **Sentence practice:**
   According to this year's P.L.E timetable, science will be written last.

3. **Instructions:**
   These are directions or detailed guidelines on how to conduct and do examinations.

   **Sentence practice:**
   You must read the instructions carefully before doing any examination.

4. **Signature:**
A signed name.

**Sentence practice:**
All candidates should write their signatures on their answer sheets.

5. **Index number:**
A special number that is given to a candidate according to the alphabetical order for easy identification.

**Sentence practice:**
Have you written your index number on your answer sheet?

6. **Candidate:**
A pupil or a person taking/sitting for an examination.

**Sentence practice:**
The school registered forty nine candidates.

7. **Candidates name:**
The name a pupil or a candidate uses in an examination.

**Sentence practice:**
The candidate’s names were written in alphabetical order.

8. **School name:**
The name of the school where the candidate studies.

**Sentence practice:**
Our school name is Yudesi Primary School.

9. **Time allowed:**
The official time the examination is meant to take.

**Sentence practice:**
The time allowed for an English examination paper is two hours and fifteen minutes.

10. **Examiner:**
An official or a person who sets and marks tests or exams.

**Sentence practice:**
Mr. Muzira is an e

11. **Examination room:**
A special room which is arranged for the candidates who are taking examinations.

**Sentence practice:**
The students entered the examination room quietly.

12. **Answer sheet:**
A special sheet of paper for writing on the answers in an examination.

**Sentence practice:**
All answer sheets should be clean.

13. **Examination centre:**
Examination or place where candidates or other schools gather to sit their examinations.

**Sentence practice:**
Yudesi Primary School is an examination center for Primary Leaving Examinations.

14. **Questions:**
These are sentences or phrases that call for answers.

**Sentence practice:**
The second question in an exam was not easy.

15. **briefing:**
The act of giving instructions to candidates before taking an examination.

**Sentence practice:**
The head teacher briefed the candidates yesterday.

16. **registration:**
The act of making an official record of candidates for examination.

**Sentence practice:**
Did you pay the registration fee?

17. **revision:**
The process of learning the previous work for examinations.

**Sentence practice:**
We have to carry out a lot of revision in order to pass the forth coming examination.

18. **pass mark:**
A set successful result in an examination.

**Sentence practice:**
The pass mark for the final examinations is 75%

19. **quality:**
A high standard of something.

**Sentence practice:**
Uganda National Examinations Board always sets quality examinations.

20. **invigilate:**
To watch people who are taking an examination to make sure that they have everything they need.

**Sentence practice:**
Miss Auma will invigilate our examinations.

21. **invigilator:**
A person who is appointed to watch candidates while they are taking an examination so as to make sure that they keep to the rules and regulations.

**Sentence practice:**
The invigilators must not accept bribes to keep their professional integrity.

22. **supervise:**
To be in charge of something or somebody and make sure that everything is done correctly.

**Sentence practice:**
Mr. Mukasa will supervise the midterm examinations.

23. **supervisor:**
A person who is appointed to be in charge of an examination centre and makes sure that the examinations are done without any malpractice.

**Sentence practice:**
A supervisor must be of high integrity.

24. **ink:**
Coloured liquid for writing.

**Sentence practice:**
All answers must be written in blue or black ink.

25. **answers:**
Replies or responses to questions.

**Sentence practice:**
All answers must be written in the given spaces.

26. **marking:**
The activity of scrutinizing candidates’ answers and awarding marks.

**Sentence practice:**
After marking the score guide, the examiners started marking.

27. **marker:**
A person who marks or grades the candidates’ work or examination papers.

**Sentence practice:**
The markers have gone for breakfast.
28. **results:**
The marks or grades that you get in an examination.

**Sentence practice:**
The P.L.E results will be released by UNEB.

29. **grades:**
The division or marks given in an examination.

**Sentence practice:**
Many candidates in P.L.E usually get good grades.

30. **aggregate:**
The total score one obtains in an examination.

**Sentence practice:**
The best candidates in P.L.E get aggregate four.

31. **accurate:**
Correct and true in every way.

**Sentence practice:**
If all your answers are accurate, you will score one hundred percent.

32. **percent:**
Out of a hundred.

**Sentence practice:**
Despite the fact that the English paper was difficult, most candidates scored 80 percent.

33. **percentage:**
The number, amount, rate and something expressed as if it is part of a total which is one hundred.

**Sentence practice:**
The results were analyzed in the percentage terms.

34. **cheat:**
To act in a dishonest way so as to score high marks in an examination.

**Sentence practice:**
Caught cheating examination, the girl was disqualified.

35. **malpractice:**
Cheating or illegal behavior in an examination.

**Sentence practice:**
Copying from one another is a form of examination malpractice.

36. **score:**
The number of points a candidate gets for the examination or test.

**Sentence practice:**
Whenever you revise your notes, you score high marks in the examination.

37. **duration:**
The length of time that examination lasts or takes.

**Sentence practice:**
The duration of the mathematics paper is two hours and thirty minutes.

38. **leakage:**
Having prior knowledge about something or an examination before the stated time.

**Sentence practice:**
All the examination paper were changed due to leakage.

39. **work:**
A task or to do something.

**Sentence practice:**
If you work hard, you will pass the examination.

40. **pass:**
To be successful in an examination or test,

**Sentence practice:**
My cousin passed the examination because she worked very hard.

41. **fail:**
Not successful in an examination or test.

**Sentence practice:**
Whereas many candidates passed the examination, Nelson failed.

42. **success:**
An achievement.

**Sentence practice:**
His success in the examination surprised the teacher.

43. **failure:**
Lack of success in doing or achieving something.

**Sentence practice:**
Failure to make enough practice, you will not pass the test.

44. **disqualify:**
To stop a candidate from doing an examination because of engaging himself in examination malpractice.

**Sentence practice:**
The supervisor told us that any candidate who took part in the examination leakage would be disqualified.

45. **pass slip/result slip:**
An official document that shows candidate's results in an examination.
**Sentence practice:**
Our head teacher has not collected the pass slips from the UNEB headquarters.

**46. certificate:**
An official document providing information that a candidate completed a course of study or passed an examination.

**Sentence practice:**
We were given the Primary Leaving Examination certificates by the head teacher.

**47. division:**
A grade.

**Sentence practice:**
Ofwono’s son passed in division one.

**48. scrutiny:**
A careful look through an examination.

**Sentence practice:**
The examinations should be available for private scrutiny.

**49. scrutinize:**
To look at or examine somebody or something.

**Sentence practice:**
The examination were carefully scrutinized yesterday.

**50. sheet:**
A piece of paper that is used for writing or printing.

**Sentence practice:**
Write your answers on separate sheets.

**51. seal:**
An official design or mark, stamped on a document to show that it is genuine and carries the authority at a particular person or organization.

**Sentence practice:**
The seal on the examination envelope was cut by the supervisor.

**52. read through:**
This is an occasion when a candidate reads the questions in an examination paper before attempting or answering them.

**Sentence practice:**
May you read through your answers please?

**53. confident:**
Feeling sure of your own ability to do something and be successful.

**Sentence practice:**
She was in a relaxed confident mood during the examination.

54. **print:**
This is to produce letters or pictures on a paper using a machine that puts ink on a surface.

**Sentence practice:**
He was advised to print his letters clearly for easy interpretation.

55. **release:**
The act of making something available to the public.

**Sentence practice:**
The Uganda National Examinations Board released our P.L.E results yesterday.

56. **impersonation:**
Pretending to be somebody in order to trick people or to entertain them.

**Sentence practice:**
Impersonation is very risky.

57. **impersonator:**
A person who copies the way another person talks or behaves in order to entertain others.

**Sentence practice:**
The show included a female impersonator.

58. **distributor:**
A person or company that supplies examination to a school.

**Sentence practice:**
The distributor was very punctual.

59. **easy:**
Done or obtained without a lot of effort or problems or difficulty.

**Sentence practice:**
We wrote a very easy test last week, didn’t we?

60. **simple:**
Not complicated but easy to understand.

**Sentence practice:**
The teacher said the paper was simple.

61. **difficult:**
Needing a lot of effort or skill to do or understand.
**Sentence practice:**
Your handwriting is really difficult to read.

62. **organize:**
To arrange for something to happen or to be provided.
**Sentence practice:**

63. **sit:**
To put somebody in sitting position.
**Sentence practice:**
The candidates will sit in the school main hall.

64. **seat:**
A place where you can sit.
**Sentence practice:**
the candidates were given comfortable seats.

65. **script:**
A writing done by hand.
**Sentence practice:**
She admired his neat script.

66. **leak:**
A deliberate act of giving secrete information on an examination.
**Sentence practice:**
Did you leak the exams?

67. **scout:**
A person who monitors exams
**Sentence practice:**
The scout moved quietly around the examination room.

68. **monitor:**
A person who watches what takes place during examinations.
**Sentence practice:**
The monitor was very friendly.

69. **set:**
To prepare or arrange for something so that it is ready for use.
**Sentence practice:**
The examinations will be set by August.

70. **photos:**
This is connected with photography.

**Sentence practice:**
That is a nice photo.

71. **withhold:**
To refuse to give something to somebody.

**Sentence practice:**
UNEB has withheld all the PLE results in Dondo District.

72. **cancel:**
To decide that something that has been arranged will not take place.

**Sentence practice:**
The examinations were cancelled.

73. **collusion:**
A secret agreement especially in order to do something dishonest or to trick people.

**Sentence practice:**
Most of the candidates practiced collusion last year.

---

**TIMETABLE:**
Study the timetable below very carefully and answer the questions that follow in full sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Day and date</th>
<th>Period</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Duration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Friday, 31\textsuperscript{st} October</td>
<td>Morning</td>
<td>9:00 a.m</td>
<td>Briefing by head teacher</td>
<td>2 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monday, 3\textsuperscript{rd} November</td>
<td>Morning</td>
<td>9:00 a.m</td>
<td>Mathematics</td>
<td>2 hrs 30 min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Afternoon</td>
<td>2:00 p.m</td>
<td>Social studies</td>
<td>2 hrs 15 min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuesday, 4\textsuperscript{th} November</td>
<td>Morning</td>
<td>9:00 a.m</td>
<td>Science</td>
<td>2 hrs 15 min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Afternoon</td>
<td>2:00 p.m</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>2 hrs 15 min</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**General instructions:**
Time allowed for the question paper;
The time allowed for each paper is shown against the name of the paper and

**NO EXTRA TIME IS TO BE ALLOWED:**
The time for reading through the questions is included in the total time shown.

**N.B:**
1. Calculators are not allowed.
2. Mobile phones are not allowed in and around the examination room.
3. You should arrive at the examination center/school at least 30 minutes before the examination is due to start, and you should be seated in the examination room 20 minutes before the time for the paper.
4. You should write your index number and names clearly as shown on the Entry Form and on the Computer print Registers.
5. Remember that the handwriting and spellings will be taken into account. Write your answers with blue or black ball point pens.
6. You should attend carefully to the general instructions that are given at the head of the question paper e.g. the time allowed.
7. Ease yourself before entering the examination room. You are not allowed to leave the examination room before the end of the period allocated to the paper except by special permission of the supervisor. If you are permitted, you should be accompanied and must not take a question paper or answer sheet out of the examination room.
8. If you arrive late, you will be expected to give a satisfactory reason to the supervisor before he/she allows you to do the examination. No extra time will be given to you. You will not be permitted to do the examination if you arrive 15 minutes after the start of the examination.

ELECTRONIC MEDIA:

VOCABULARY PRACTICE:

1. **Electronic:**
   - A device having or using many small parts as microchips that control and direct a small electric current.
   - Any device that uses electricity to function.

   **Sentence practice:**
   She uses an electronic calculator.

2. **Media:**
   Radio, television, the internet and newspapers which provide people with information and entertainment.

   **Sentence practice:**
   Rose got the news through the media.

3. **music:**
   The organized sound.

   **Sentence practice:**
I enjoy listening to gospel music.

4. **Radio:**
A device or machine that is used for broadcasting programmes to the general public by means of sound waves.

*Sentence practice:*
Janet turned off the radio because she was very tired.

5. **Television:**
A device/piece of electrical equipment with a screen on which you can view programmes with moving pictures and sound.

*Sentence practice:*
Shaky likes watching comedies on Urban Television.

6. **Broadcast:**
To sent out programmes on television or radio.

*Sentence practice:*
The news will broadcast over radio Simba.

7. **Telecast:**
To broadcast on a television.

*Sentence practice:*
This event will be telecast to nearly fifty countries.

8. **Televise:**
To broadcast something on television.

*Sentence practice:*
The speech will be televised live.

9. **Programme**
A plan of things that will be done or included in the development if something.

*Sentence practice:*
The programme line – up was cancelled.

10. **Studio:**
A room where television or radio programmes are recorded and broadcast.

*Sentence practice:*
Our home is next to WBS Television studios.

11. **record:**
To write an account of something that is kept so that it can be listened to or looked at and used in future.

**Sentence practice:**
King Saha records his music form DCL studios.

12. **tune:**
To change or adjust the controls on a radio or television in order to a certain channel or programme.

**Sentence practice:**
Unless you tune into WBS television, you won’t listen to this news.

13. **eject:**
To press a button or a remote so as to get a tape or CD pushed out of a DVD player or radio cassette.

**Sentence practice:**
When you want to remove a CD, press the eject button.

14. **advertise:**
To inform the public about a product or a service in order to encourage people to buy or use it.

**Sentence practice:**
If you want to attract more customers, try advertising on WBS channel.

15. **advertisement:**
A notice, picture or film telling people about a product, service or a job.

**Sentence practice:**
The advertisement was so funny.

16. **announce:**
To tell people about something especially a decision, plan etc officially.

**Sentence practice:**
They will announce the loss of their vehicle soon.

17. **announcement:**
A spoken or written statement that informs people about something.

**Sentence practice:**
We listened to announcements on CBS radio station.

18. **favourite/favorite:**
Something you like much more than others of the same kind.

**Sentence practice:**
Capital FM, is my favourite radio station.

19. **pop music:**
The modern popular music of all kind.

**Sentence practice:**
The youth enjoy listening to pop music.

20. **camcorder:**
A video camera that records pictures and sounds that can be carried around.

**Sentence practice:**
That is the studio from where I bought the camcorder.

21. **aerial:**
An antenna or metal rod for sending or receiving radio and television signals.

**Sentence practice:**
Whenever I adjust the aerial, I get clear pictures.

22. **knob:**
A round switch on a radio used for turning it on and off.

**Sentence practice:**
Please, turn the knob if you want to switch the radio on.

23. **speaker:**
The part of the radio out of which the sound comes.

**Sentence practice:**
My uncle’s radio has two big speakers.

24. **tape:**
A long narrow strip of magnetic material which is sued for recording sounds or information.

**Sentence practice:**
She bought a tape with nice music.

25. **player:**
A machine for reproducing sound or pictures that have been recorded on CDs.

**Sentence practice:**
My DVD player is old.

26. **volume:**
The amount of sound that is produced by a radio or television.

**Sentence practice:**
If you cannot hear the gospel music well, please increase the volume.

27. **bulletin:**
A short news report on a radio or television.

**Sentence practice:**
I heard a bulletin on the president’s health.

28. **channel:**
A television station or a band of radio waves used for broadcasting radio or television programmes.

**Sentence practice:**
I select the sports channel whenever I want to listen to sports news.

29. **guide:**
A table or line-up showing the time when different radio or television programmes will be broadcast.

**Sentence practice:**
According to the guide, the English news will be read at 9:00 a.m.

30. **news:**
The new information about something that has happened recently.

**Sentence practice:**
Have you watched the news?

31. **entertainment:**
The must, films, movies or plays that are used to entertain the public on radio or television.

**Sentence practice:**
Her favourite entertainment is gospel music.

32. **gospel:**
A style of religious singing developed by Africans and Americans.

**Sentence practice:**
I prefer gospel music to pop music.

33. **line-up:**
A set of radio or television programmes arranged following one another.

**Sentence practice:**
Gospel music will come after the news according to the line-up.

34. **talk show:**
A radio or television program in which people discuss various issues or topics.

**Sentence practice:**
Politicians and journalists enjoy talk shows.

35. **station:**
A television or radio company and the programmes it broadcasts.

**Sentence practice:**
Beat FM radio station broadcasts news in Luganda at 1:00 p.m.

### 36. on:
Connecting of functioning.

**Sentence practice:**
The radio is on.

### 37. off:
Disconnected or not functioning.

**Sentence practice:**
Did you switch off the television?

### 38. CD:
A small disc on which sound or information is recorded.

**Sentence practice:**
A CD should be kept well and so should be a DVD.

### 39. DVD:
A disc on which large amounts of information especially photographs and videos can be stored for use on a computer or DVD player.

**Sentence practice:**
This film is available on DVD now.

### 40. CD – ROM:
A disc on which large amounts of information sounds and pictures can be stored for use on a computer.

**Sentence practice:**
The late Kakoma’s biography is available on a CD – ROM.

### 41. C.P.U:
The part on a computer that controls all the other parts of the system.

**Sentence practice:**
They have bought a new C.P.U.

### 42. RAM:
A computer memory in which data can be changed or removed and can be looked at in any order.

**Sentence practice:**
The RAM of my computer is very fast.

### 43. laptop:
A small computer that works with a battery and can easily be carried.

**Sentence practice:**
She bought a laptop last year.

44. **DISC/DISK**
A CD.

**Sentence practice:**
Judith Babirye’s gospel music is now available on disc.

45. **recorder:**
A device or machine for recording sound or pictures.

**Sentence practice:**
If I had a lot of money, I would buy a video recorder.

46. **video:**
A copy of a film or programme which is recorded on a video tape.

**Sentence practice:**
If my father gets money, we will buy Michael Jackson’s music video.

47. **press:**
To push a button of a radio or cassette player.

**Sentence practice:**
Press the button to stop the music.

48. **connect:**
To join two or more things together.

**Sentence practice:**
Where is the connecting wire?

49. **internet:**
A system by which computers are connected through cables and telephone lines to give useful information all over the world.

**Sentence practice:**
The internet is an attractive medium of communication.

50. **e – mail:**
A message sent by a computer or an internet.

**Sentence practice:**
I received an e – mail last week.

51. **website:**
A place connected to the internet where people put or store information.

**Sentence practice:**
Every website has a password.
52. **extension cable:**
A wire covered in plastic or rubber that carries electricity or telephone signals.

**Sentence practice:**
All computers were connected using extension cables.

53. **compact disc:**
A device that is small and easy to carry on information and music can be recorded.

**Sentence practice:**
The gospel music was recorded on the compact disc.

54. **microphone:**
a piece of electrical equipment that is used for making sounds louder or for recording them.

**Sentence practice:**
The microphone needs a new dry cell.

55. **earphone:**
A piece of equipment that fits in the ears and it is used for listening to music radio etc.

**Sentence practice:**
Where are my earphones?

56. **deck:**
A part of the sound system that records or plays sound on a disc or tape.

**Sentence practice:**
Our video deck got spoilt.

57. **button:**
A small part of a machine that you press to make it work.

**Sentence practice:**
She pressed the eject button to open the DVD player.

58. **telephone:**
A system of talking to someone else over long distances by using wires, radios etc.

**Sentence practice:**
The telephone rang and Dalton answered it.

59. **amplify:**
To increase something in strength especially sound.

**Sentence practice:**
Will you amplify the guitar?

60. amplifier:
   An electrical device or piece of equipment that makes sounds or radio signals louder.
   **Sentence practice:**
   That amplifier is very powerful.

61. Newsreader:
   A person who reads news on a television or radio.
   **Sentence practice:**
   Daniel Arap Moi is a newsreader on WBS television.

62. pause:
   Stop a tape, CD etc for a short time using the pause button.
   **Sentence practice:**
   Pause that movie, please.

63. reporter:
   A person who collects and reports news for newspapers, radios or television.
   **Sentence practice:**
   The news reporter published that the former minister was corrupt.

64. landline:
   A telephone connection that uses wires carried on poles or under the ground.
   **Sentence practice:**
   I will call you later on your landline.

65. mobile phone:
   A telephone that you can carry around with you.
   **Sentence practice:**
   Most Ugandans use mobile phones to communicate.

66. handset:
   The part of a telephone that you hold near your and mouth.
   **Sentence practice:**
   Our home handset is very loud.

67. receiver:
   The part of a telephone that you hold next to your mouth and ear while speaking.
   **Sentence practice:**
Mummy beat me for spoiling the receiver of the telephone.

68. **airtime:**
The amount of time a radio or television station gives to a particular program.

**Sentence practice:**
The airtime for the advertisement on the radio is over.

69. **airtime card:**
The amount of time is paid for when one is using a mobile phone or cell phone.

**Sentence practice:**
Go and buy me an airtime card of five thousand shillings.

70. **network mast:**
A tower used for sending telephone or radio signals.

**sentence practice:**
Mobile telephone companies have built network masts to boost their signal reception.

71. **dial:**
To use a telephone by pressing buttons to make a call.

**Sentence practice:**
Dial that telephone number.

72. **call:**
To telephone or ring someone.

**Sentence practice:**
My brother called me from New York last evening.

73. **SIM card:**
A plastic card inside a mobile phone or cell phone that stores personal information about the user.

**Sentence practice:**
I bought a new SIM card.

74. **load:**
To put airtime on to a mobile phone or landline.

**Sentence practice:**
She will load that airtime on the telephone.

75. **delete/erase:**
To remove written or recorded information from a computer, mobile phone etc.

**Sentence practice:**
Did you delete the photos?
Jonah did not erase the telephone number.

76. **screen:**
The part of a television or a computer where the picture or information appears.
**Sentence practice:**
Who broke the screen of my laptop?

77. **computer:**
An electronic machine that can store, organize and find information, do calculations and control other machines.
**Sentence practice:**
She bought a new computer.

78. **internet café:**
A place where people go to surf for information.
**Sentence practice:**
What internet café was burnt last night?

79. **surf:**
To use the internet.
**Sentence practice:**
She used her phone to surf.

80. **internet explorer:**
A computer program connected on the internet for searching for information.
**Sentence practice:**
The internet explorer was shut down.

81. **password:**
A series of letters or numbers that you must type into a computer or computer system in order to be able to use it.
**Sentence practice:**
Her password is difficult.

82. **service fee:**
An amount of money paid at the internet café.
**Sentence practice:**
How much is the service fee?

83. **service provider:**
A business company that provides a service to customers especially one that connects customers to the internet.

**Sentence practice:**
Gmail is one of the internet service providers.

84. **mouse:**
A small device that is moved by hand across a surface to control the movement of the cursor on the screen of a computer.

**Sentence practice:**
Click on the right button of the mouse to delete the message.

85. **virus:**
The instructions that are hidden within a computer program and are designed to cause faults or destroy data.

**Sentence practice:**
Does your computer have a virus?

86. **search:**
The act of looking for information in a computer database.

**Sentence practice:**
She had searched for information in a computer.

87. **search engine:**
A computer program that searches the internet and information about a particular word or group of words.

**Sentence practice:**
Open up the search engine now.

88. **log:**
To perform actions that follow one another to begin to use a computer system.

**Sentence practice:**
One usually need a password to log in.

89. **access:**
To open a computer file in order to get or add information.

**Sentence practice:**
Did you access my Facebook account?

90. **google:**
To type words into the search engine on the internet so as to find information about them.

**Sentence practice:**
I typed the word “Alien” on the google.

Passage; (Monitor English Course bk 7 pg 116 – 118)
Program: (Monitor English Course bk 7 pg 121)
And other sources.

**RIGHTS, RESPONSIBILITIES AND FREEDOM.**
**CHILDREN’S RIGHTS AND RESPONSIBILITIES.**
**VOCABULARY DEVELOPMENT.**

Learn the pronunciation, spellings meanings of the following words and use them to make meaningful sentences.

1. **child:**
   A young human being who is not yet an adult.
   **Sentence practice:**
   Mugabi is an undisciplined child.

2. **rights:**
   The moral or legal claims to get or have something.
   **Sentence practice:**
   Children have a right to education.

3. **responsibility/response:**
   To have a duty of taking care of somebody or something.
   **Sentence practice:**
   Rose is a responsible child.

4. **freedom/free:**
   The liberty or right to do or say what you wish without being stopped.
   **Sentence practice:**
   Children must be given freedom.

5. **food:**
   The things that people or animals eat.
   **Sentence practice:**
   Children are entitled to food.

6. **shelter:**
A house or a place to live in.

**Sentence practice:**
Children need clothing, food and shelter in order to lead a happy life.

7. **education/educate:**
The process of teaching, training and learning.

**Sentence practice:**
Education and guidance are examples of children’s rights.

8. **care:**
To provide what somebody needs for their health and protection.

**Sentence practice:**
Both children and animals need medical care.

9. **clothing:**
These are clothes or garments.

**Sentence practice:**
All human beings need clothing as a basic need.

10. **medication:**
The drugs or medicine that you take to prevent or treat an illness or a sickness.

**Sentence practice:**
We should not take any medication without the doctors’ prescription.

11. **force:**
Something done or happening against somebody’s will.

**Sentence practice:**
Girls shouldn’t be forced to get married.

12. **life:**
The ability to breathe or grow old.

**Sentence practice:**
You should guard your life against diseases.

13. **help:**
To assist.

**Sentence practice:**
Good children help their parents with domestic work.

14. **properly:**
Done in a way that is socially/morally acceptable.

**Sentence practice:**
Parents should teach their children to behave properly.
15. **work:**
A duty or a task

**Sentence practice:**
Children must learn how to work.

16. **protection/protect:**
The act of making sure that somebody is not harmed or injured.

**Sentence practice:**
It’s our responsibility to protect children from violence and child abuse.

17. **attend/attention:**
To be present at an event or function or occasion or ceremony or celebration.

**Sentence practice:**
Children must attend school regularly.

18. **homework:**
A piece of work that teachers give to children to do at home.

**Sentence practice:**
Eva always does her homework before she goes to bed.

19. **obedient:**
To be ready or willing to do whatever you are told.

**Sentence practice:**
Girls are more obedient to their parents than boys.

20. **respect:**
The polite behavior towards somebody that you feel is important.

**Sentence practice:**
Both boys and girls have a right to be treated with respect.

21. **refuse:**
To say that you will not take or do something.

**Sentence practice:**
My step mother refused to give me food yesterday.

22. **report:**
To give information to somebody else.

**Sentence practice:**
If your rights are violated, you should report to the police station or local council.

23. **peace:**
A period at time when there isn’t violence or war.

**Sentence practice:**
We must always live with our neighbours in peace.

24. **grow:**
To become bigger or taller and develop into an adult.

**Sentence practice:**
When my son grows, he will become a lawyer.

25. **clean:**
Not dirty or to remove dirt.

**Sentence practice:**
He cleans his teeth everyday.

26. **tidy:**
Keeping neat and in order.

**Sentence practice:**
Our home is really tidy.

27. **abuse:**
To treat somebody in a cruel or violent way.

**Sentence practice:**
Children should not be abused of their rights.

28. **mistreat.**
To treat a person or animal in a cruel or unfair way.

**Sentence practice:**
She ran away from home because of the mistreatment by her step mother.

29. **early:**
To arrive or do before the usual expected or planned time.

**Sentence practice:**
Hilda got married at an early age.

30. **convict:**
To decide and say officially in a court of law that somebody is guilty or a crime:

**Sentence practice:**
The sugar daddy was convicted or defilement.

31. **Imprison/jail:**
To put someone in prison or jail or goal.

**Sentence practice:**
The judge imprisoned him for child abuse.
32. **prison/jail/goal:**
   A building or place where criminals are kept as a punishment.
   **Sentence practice:**
   The sugar daddy was sent to prison for three years.

33. **cell:**
   A room for one or more prisoners in a prison or police station.
   **Sentence practice:**
   The prisoner died in that cell.

34. **innocent:**
   Not having done anything wrong.
   **Sentence practice:**
   He was set free because he was innocent.

35. **guilty:**
   Having done something against the law or illegal.
   **Sentence practice:**
   Kato was found guilty of murder and he was sentenced to seven years in prison.

36. **sugar daddy:**
   A rich older man who gives gifts and money to a much younger girl usually in return for sex.
   **Sentence practice:**
   A sugar daddy was accused of defiling a P.7 girl.

37. **sugar mammy:**
   A rich older woman who gives gifts and money to a much younger boy usually in return for sex.
   **Sentence practice:**
   The police arrested a sugar mummy yesterday.

38. **dropout:**
   To leave school before completing studies.
   **Sentence practice:**
   The introduction of Universal Primary Education helped to reduce the number of school dropouts.

39. **abortion:**
   A deliberate ending of a pregnancy at an early stage.
   **Sentence practice:**
Abortion is a criminal act.

40. labour:
   Physical work.
   **Sentence practice:**
   Child labour is punishable by law.

41. bad touches:
   The acts of putting one's hands and fingers onto sensitive body parts.
   **Sentence practice:**
   Young girls should say no to bad touches.

42. accuse:
   To say that somebody has done something wrong or is guilty of something.
   **Sentence practice:**
   He was accused of raping a young girl.

43. arrest:
   To seize somebody with the authority of the law.
   **Sentence practice:**
   Edrine was arrested because he raped a girl.

44. child abuse:
   The act of harming or hurting a child in a physical, sexual or emotional way.
   **Sentence practice:**
   Most parents in Uganda practice child abuse.

45. crime:
   All illegal act or activity that can be punished by law.
   **Sentence practice:**
   Did she commit the crime?

46. criminal:
   Being forbidden by law.
   **Sentence practice:**
   Raping is a criminal offence.

47. cruel/cruelty:
   Having a desire to cause pain and suffering.
   **Sentence practice:**
   His father is a cruel man.

48. judge:
   An official in a court of law who presides over trials and make judgments.
Sentence practice:
The judge sentenced the criminal to four years in prison.

49. magistrate:
An official who acts as a judge in the lowest court of law.
Sentence practice:
We entered the court before the magistrate.

50. plead:
To state in a court of law that you are guilty or innocent of a crime.
Sentence practice:
The criminal pleaded to the judge for forgiveness.

51. sentence:
A punishment given to someone by a court of law.
Sentence practice:
If you mistreat your children, you will be sentenced heavily.

52. try:
To examine an evidence in court and decide whether somebody is innocent or guilty.
Sentence practice:
He was tried for murder of his wife.

53. trial:
A formal examination of evidence in court by a judge and often a jury to decide that someone is innocent or guilty.
Sentence practice:
Joseph is on trial for defilement.

54. witness:
A person who gives evidence in court.
Sentence practice:
The witness was bribed.

55. defile:
Making something dirty or no longer pure especially something important.
Sentence practice:
Are you sure Dalton defiled Rose.

56. court:
A place where legal trials take place and crimes are judged.
Sentence practice:
The sugar mammy ran out of the court.

57. **rape:**
To force somebody to have sex with you especially using violence.
**Sentence practice:**
Paul used to rape girls in his village.

58. **rapist/raper:**
A person who forces somebody to have sex with him/her when they don’t want.
**Sentence practice:**
The rapist ran into a bush.

59. **punish:**
To make somebody suffer because they have broken the law or done something wrong.
**Sentence practice:**
Was he punished for playing in class?

60. **local council:**
A committee or group of members that enforces and settles disputes in a community.
**Sentence practice:**

61. **set free:**
To release or let go.
**Sentence practice:**
All prisoners were set free yesterday.

62. **custody:**
The legal right or duty of taking care of or keeping somebody or something.
**Sentence practice:**
The parents were locked in a safe place for custody.

63. **victim:**
A person who has been attacked, injured or killed as a result of crime, a disease or an accident.
**Sentence practice:**
All the victims were taken to court.

64. **child sacrifice:**
The act of giving in a child for sacrifice in order to get something that seems more important.
**Sentence practice:**

73
The kidnappers were jailed for child sacrifice.

65. **child labour:**
The act of making a child work instead of going to school.

*Sentence practice:*
Most parents in Kabale were arrested for child labour.

66. **child abduction:**
The act of taking a child away illegally especially using force.

*Sentence practice:*
Their child was abducted by the neighbours last night.

67. **murder:**
A crime of killing somebody illegally and deliberately.

*Sentence practice:*
He was found guilty of murder.

68. **murderer:**
A person who kills somebody illegally and deliberately.

*Sentence practice:*
The murderer was sentenced to death.

69. **indecent assault:**
A sexual attack on somebody that does not include rape.

*Sentence practice:*
The youth are found of practicing indecent assault.

70. **prisoner:**
A person who is kept in prison as a punishment or while waiting for trial.

*Sentence practice:*
The prisoners were sent back to jail.

71. **jailer/gader:**
A person in charge of a prison and the prisoners in it.

*Sentence practice:*
The jailer died of cancer.

72. **lawyer:**
A person who is trained and qualified to advise people about the law to represent them in court and to write legal documents.

*Sentence practice:*
Tom Alvin Diego is a lawyer.

73. **law:**
A rule that deals with a particular crime, agreement etc.
Sentence practice:
They should put strict laws against rapists.

74. police:
An official organization whose job is to make people obey the law, to prevent and solve crimes.
Sentence practice:
The police arrested five parents because of mistreating children.

75. bailed/bond:
The money that one agrees to pay if somebody accused of a crime does not appear in court for trial.
Sentence practice:
The sugar mummy paid ten bail.

76. dock:
The part of the court where the person who has been accused of a crime does not stands or sits during trial.
Sentence practice:
The criminal shed tears while in the dock.

77. corporal punishment:
The physical punishment of a person especially by hitting them.
Sentence practice:
Corporal punishment is a crime in Uganda today.

78. counter:
To reply to somebody by trying to prove that what they said is not true.
Sentence practice:
Do people counter for others in courts of law.

79. offence:
The act of upsetting or insulting someone.
Sentence practice:
He was not aware that he committed an offence.

80. offender:
A person who commits a crime.
Sentence practice:
The offender cried in court.

81. investigation:
An official examination of the facts about a situation or crime.
Sentence practice:
She is under investigation, isn't she?

82. **client:**
A person who uses the services or advice of a profession person or organization.

**Sentence practice:**
The lawyer argued with his client

83. **accuser:**
A person who says that somebody has done something wrong or is guilty of something.

**Sentence practice:**
Paul accused the accuser of lying to him.

84. **accused:**
A person who is said to have done something wrong or said to be guilty of a crime.

**Sentence practice:**
The accused tried to escape but he was rearrested.

85. **police constable:**
A police officer of the lowest rank.

**Sentence practice:**
Lumu and Waguma are police constables.

86. **sniff:**
To make a short smell of something.

**Sentence practice:**
I sniffed the meat to see if it gone off.

87. **drug trafficker:**
A person who deals in legal trade of drugs.

**Sentence practice:**
The drug trafficker was arrested last week.

88. **statement:**
Something that you say or write giving information or an opinion.

**Sentence practice:**
The statement he made was true.

---

**Read the poem and answer the questions that follow in full sentences.**

Defilement! Defilement! Defilement!

What a dangerous vice you are!
In homes, schools, churches, mosques, courts, Everywhere people talk about you.

Sugar daddies and mummies, Trick innocent girls and boys, With sweets, money and other gifts, Oh! What a serious crime this is!

Sugar daddies and mummies, Why do you infect innocent children? With HIV/AIDS, Why don’t you have mercy?

Young girls and boys, Guard your lives against these ruthless men and women, Say no to sweets, money, gifts and lifts, Say no to bad touches, Avoid risks to stay safer!

**ANIMALS NEEDS AND FREEDOM.**

**VOCABULARY DEVELOPMENT**

Learn the pronunciation spellings, meanings of the following words and use them to make meaningful sentences.

1. **animal:**
   A creature that is not a bird, a fish, an insect or a human being.
   **Sentence practice:**
   A lion is a dangerous animal and so is tiger.

2. **need:**
   Something which somebody or an animal requires so as to live in a meaningful life.
   **Sentence practice:**
   Much as a cow is an animal, it also needs protection.

3. **capture:**
To catch an animal or a person and keep them in an enclosed space or as a prisoner.

**Sentence practice:**
Some species of animals are captured in nets and sold to other countries.

4. **captivity:**
The state of being kept in an enclosed space or as a prisoner.

**Sentence practice:**
The poacher was held in captivity for two weeks.

5. **poach:**
To illegally hunt animals or birds in game parks or game reserves.

**Sentence practice:**
Elephants are poached for ivory.

6. **poacher:**
A person who illegally hunts animals or birds in game parks or game reserves.

**Sentence practice:**
Henry's father is an international poacher.

7. **reproduction:**
the process of reproducing young ones.

**Sentence practice:**
The farmers studied about reproduction in cattle.

8. **insemination:**
The process of putting sperms in a female animal in order to make it pregnant.

**Sentence practice:**
Artificial insemination helps to improve the breed of cattle.

9. **discomfort:**
A feeling of slight pain or of being physically uncomfortable.

**Sentence practice:**
Animals usually experience severe discomfort during the dry season.

10. **injury:**
The harm or damage done to a person’s or animal’s body.

**Sentence practice:**
My cow and its calf sustained minor injuries when they fell into a pit latrine.

11. **secure:**
Feeling confident and happy about your self or a particular place.

**Sentence practice:**
Domestic animals fell secure when they are not tortured.

12. **thirst:**
The feeling of needing or wanting a drink.

**Sentence practice:**
Animals should be given water to quench their thirst.

13. **hunger:**
The feeling of needing or wanting something to eat.

**Sentence practice:**
If you don’t feed your animals, they die of hunger.

14. **hindrance:**
The act of making it very difficult for something to happen.

**Sentence practice:**
During the rainy season, animals feed on grass without any hindrance.

15. **natural:**
God made or created by God.

**Sentence practice:**
All animals are natural.

16. **distress:**
A feeling of great worry or unhappiness or great suffering.

**Sentence practice:**
When you cut off the cows tail, it will be distressed.

17. **frighten:**
To scare or make somebody or something afraid.

**Sentence practice:**
The barking of the dog frightened the goats.

18. **sanctuary:**
A place where wild birds and animals are protected.

**Sentence practice:**
There are a lot of flamingoes and ostriches at the wildlife sanctuary.

19. **dock:**
To cut an animals’ tail short.

**Sentence practice:**
Was that sheep docked.

20. **pet:**
An animal, a bird etc that you keep at home for pleasure rather than being kept for work or food.

**Sentence practice:**
Do you have any pet.

21. **tether:**
To tie an animal on a post so that it can't move very far.

**Sentence practice:**
Those animals are tethered.

22. **stray:**
An animal that has got lost or separated from its owner or that has no answer.

**Sentence practice:**
Isn't it a stray.

23. **slaughter:**
The killing of an animal for their meat.

**Sentence practice:**
That man slaughtered a goat.

24. **slaughter house/abattoir:**
A building where animals are killed for food.

**Sentence practice:**
The abattoir is very dirty.
The butcher has gone to the slaughter house.

25. **torture:**
To cause severe pain to somebody or something.

**Sentence practice:**
Animal torture is prohibited.

26. **husbandry:**
Farming, especially when done carefully and well.

**Sentence practice:**
She is practicing animal husbandry.

27. **veterinary:**
The process of caring for the health of animals.

**Sentence practice:**
Veterinary medicine is expensive.

28. **veterinarian:**
A person who cares for the health of animals.
Sentence practice:
Veterinarian should be experienced.

29. dip:
To put animals in a bath of liquids containing chemicals in order to kill the external parasites on them.
Sentence practice:
Most animals do not want to be or being dipped.

30. herdsman:
A man whose job is to take care of cattle.
Sentence practice:
Peter is a herdsman.

31. shepherd:
A person who look after or takes care of sheep.
Sentence practice:
Waguma is a shepherd.

32. goatherd:
A person who looks after goats.
Sentence practice:
Dalton is a very king goatherd.

33. welfare:
The general health, happiness and safety of a person or an animal.
Sentence practice:
We are concerned about the animals welfare.

34. vaccinate:
To give a person or and animal a vaccine especially by injection to protect them from diseases.
Sentence practice:
That cow was vaccinated against mastitis.

35. quarantine:
A period of time when an animal that has or may have a disease is kept away from others in order to prevent the disease from spreading to the others.
Sentence practice:
The bulls were all kept in quarantine for eight months.

36. sorrow:
A feeling of great sadness because something bad has happened.
Sentence practice:
Animals also feel sorrow when one of them is killed.

37. anxious:
Feeling worried and nervous.
Sentence practice:
He was anxious when he killed a dog.

38. heifer:
A young cow especially one that does not have a calf.
Sentence practice:
The heifer was dehorned last week.

39. bullock:
A young bull that has not been castrated and hasn’t started mounting cows.
Sentence practice:
The bullock was sold expensively.

40. ox:
A bull that has been castrated and especially used for pulling farm equipments.
Sentence practice:
Four oxen were seen ploughing Mr. Mukasa’s farm.

41. tame:
To make used to living with people.
Sentence practice:
A dog is a tamed animal.

42. graze:
To eat or feed on grass.
Sentence practice:
A herd of cattle was seen grazing beside the river.

43. butcher:
A person who kills and sells animals meat.
Sentence practice:
The butcher sold a lot of beef on the Easter Sunday.

44. butcher’s:
A place where meat is sold.
Sentence practice:
Who owns that butcher's?

45. butchery:
The cruel, violent and unnecessary killing of animals.

**Sentence practice:**
Butchery is a bad act.

**Activity:**

**ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION:**
**IMPORTANCE OF ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION:**
**VOCABULARY DEVELOPMENT:**

Learn the pronunciation, spellings and meanings of the following words and use them to make meaningful sentences.

1. **environmental:**
The natural world in which people, plants and animals live.

   **Sentence practice:**
   We must conserve our environment in order to attract tourists.

2. **protect:**
To make sure that somebody or something is not harmed, injured or damaged or destroyed.

   **Sentence practice:**
   We should protect our environment from being destroyed.

3. **conserve:**
To protect something and prevent it from being destroyed, wasted or damaged.

   **Sentence practice:**
   The Ministry of Tourism should set up laws to conserve wildlife.

4. **pollution:**
The process of making water, land, air etc dirty or contaminated.

   **Sentence practice:**
   There is a lot of pollution in the city nowadays.

5. **pollutant:**
A foreign substance that makes something dirty or impure.

   **Sentence practice:**
   Most pollutants are wastes from human activities.

6. **garbage:**
This is rubbish or useless or waste material of any kind.

**Sentence practice:**
Dumping garbage in water bodies is a bad act.

7. **refuse:**
The waste material that has been thrown away or damaged.

**Sentence practice:**
You should dispose of domestic refuse responsibly.

8. **erosion:**
The removal of top soil.

**Sentence practice:**
Heavy rains cause soil erosion.

9. **drought:**
A long dry season.

**Sentence practice:**
Severe drought leads to famine.

10. **floods:**
The large volumes of water covering an area.

**Sentence practice:**
The recent heavy rains caused floods in Bududa and Kasese districts.

11. **storms:**
A very bad weather with strong winds and rainfall of thunder and lightning.

**Sentence practice:**
The storms destroyed many buildings last year.

12. **source:**
A person or a place where you get something from.

**Sentence practice:**
The environment is a source of raw materials for industries.

13. **raw material:**
Things in their natural form used for making other products.

**Sentence practice:**
Limestone is the raw material for cement.

14. **habitat:**
A natural home or place where a particular species of animals or plants is normally found.

**Sentence practice:**
Wetlands are a habitats for papyrus trees.

15. **flora:**
The plants of a given area.

**Sentence practice:**
There are rare species of flora on Mabira forest.

16. **fauna:**
All the animals living in an area.

**Sentence practice:**
The poachers have endangered certain species of fauna in game reserves.

17. **manure:**
The waste from animals and plants which is mixed with the soil to enable crops grow well.

**Sentence practice:**
The farmers had a good harvest because they used manure.

18. **drainage:**
A system of letting water flow away from an area.

**Sentence practice:**
A poor drainage system may result into disease outbreak.

19. **smoking:**
A habit of being addicted to cigarettes.

**Sentence practice:**
Smoking in public is illegal.

20. **burning:**
Destroying or damaging something by fire.

**Sentence practice:**
Burning bushes and charcoal degrades the environment.

21. **overgrazing:**
The excess grazing to an extent that the land is damaged.

**Sentence practice:**
Overgrazing causes environmental degradation.

**Activity:**

**WAYS OF PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT:**

** VOCABULARY DEVELOPMENT:**
Learn the pronunciations, spellings, meanings of the following words and use them to make meaningful sentences.

1. **conservation:**
The process of preventing something from being wasted, destroyed or damaged.
**Sentence practice:**
The youth should be interested in environmental and wildlife conservation.

2. **terraces:**
The flat area of the ground are dug into the sides of a hill like steps to allow crop growing.
**Sentence practice:**
Terraces help to prevent soil erosion.

3. **crop rotation:**
The scientific way of growing various crops on the same piece of land season after season.
**Sentence practice:**
If you practice crop rotation, your harvest will improve.

4. **mulching:**
The process of covering the soil with dry grass so as to keep moisture in it.
**Sentence practice:**
It is good to mulch your tomato garden.

5. **mulch:**
The material e.g. dry grass, dry leaves, etc that you put around a plant to protect its base and its roots in order to improve the quality of the soil, to keep moisture in the soil and to prevent weeds from growing.
**Sentence practice:**
The mulch has to rot in order to form humus.

6. **dumping:**
The act of throwing waste.
**Sentence practice:**
He was told to dump the rubbish into the pit.

7. **reserve:**
To keep something for a particular purpose.
**Sentence practice:**
We must reserve forests so that we can get adequate rain.

8. **degrade:**
   To make something become bad or less important.
   **Sentence practice:**
   Swamp reclamation degrades wetlands.

9. **dust-bin/rubbish bin:**
   A portable container used for storing rubbish before it is disposed of.
   **Sentence practice:**
   People should dispose of rubbish in the dustbin.

10. **waste paper/basket/bin:**
    A small container in which you put some pieces of paper and other things that you don't need.
    **Sentence practice:**
    The head teacher has a waste paper basket in his office.

11. **rubbish pit:**
    A pit/a hole dug underground in which rubbish is dumped.
    **Sentence practice:**
    The boys are burning the rubbish in the rubbish pit because it was full.

12. **dispose of:**
    To get rid of something that you don't want.
    **Sentence practice:**
    One should not dispose of human waste in the garden.

13. **litter:**
    The small pieces of rubbish or garbage such as paper, cans, bottles etc that people have left lying in a public place.
    **Sentence practice:**
    There will be fines for people who drop litter in the environment.

14. **incinerator:**
    An enclosed container for burning waste at high temperatures.
    **Sentence practice:**
    The cleaner is burning rubbish in the incinerator.

15. **deforestation:**
    The rapid cutting down of trees without planting new ones.
    **Sentence practice:**
    What is the danger of deforestation?

16. **afforestation:**
The growing of trees where they have never been.

**Sentence practice:**
Do people in your village practice afforestation?

17. **re-afforestation:**
The planting of trees where they have ever been.

**Sentence practice:**
The Prime Minister of Buganda kingdom is encouraging most people to practice re-afforestation.

**Activity:**
Poem; (Monitor English Course bk 7 pg 128)
Passage; (Monitor English Course bk 7 pg 129 – 130)
Minutes: (Fountain English revision bk 7 pg 96 – 99)

**CEREMONIES:**

**MARRIAGE:**

**VOCABULARY DEVELOPMENT:**

Learn the pronunciations, spellings, meanings of the following words and use them to make meaningful sentences.

1. **marriage:**
The legal relationship between a husband and a wife.

**Sentence practice:**
Their marriage lasted for over a decade.

2. **ceremony:**
A religious or public occasion.

**Sentence practice:**
Did you attend their marriage ceremony?

3. **marry:**
To become a husband or a wife of somebody.

**Sentence practice:**
The princess refused to get married.
4. marital status:
The fact of whether you are single or married.

**Sentence practice:**
What is your marital status?

5. religious marriage:
The type of marriage presided over by a religious leader e.g. a pastor, a priest, a sheikh, or bishop.

**Sentence practice:**
A religious marriage is believed to be holy.

6. customary/cultural marriage:
The type of marriage presided over by cultural leaders, relatives and clan members.

**Sentence practice:**
It is interesting to attend a cultural marriage.

7. state/civil marriage:
The type of marriage presided over by a state or government official e.g Registrar.

**Sentence practice:**
I prefer state marriage to cultural marriage.

8. introduction:
The act of making one's fiancé or fiancé known to one's parents or family.

**Sentence practice:**
In Buganda, the introduction ceremony is held before marriage.

9. baptism:
A Christian ceremony in which a person is welcomed into the Christian faith.

**Sentence practice:**
The Bishop baptized many children on Easter Monday.

10. confirmation:
A ceremony at which a person becomes a full member of the Christian church.

**Sentence practice:**
I attended the confirmation ceremony at church last Sunday.

11. date:
A meeting that you have arranged with a boyfriend or girl friend.

**Sentence practice:**
Clinton has a date with Ritah tomorrow.

12. **engagement:**
The period before marriage or an agreement to marry someone.

**Sentence practice:**
Dr. Opolot bought an engagement ring for his fiancé Rebecca.

13. **engagement ring:**
A ring which a man usually gives to a woman as a sign that they have decided to get married.

**Sentence practice:**
Jonas gave Catherine a diamond ring.

14. **nuptial/wedding:**
A marriage ceremony at which a husband and wife are united.

**Sentence practice:**
Betty’s wedding took place at Namirembe cathedral.

15. **wedding ring:**
A ring that is given during a marriage ceremony and worn afterwards to show that you are married.

**Sentence practice:**
Your wedding ring has fallen.

16. **couple:**
Two things or people.

**Sentence practice:**
Immaculate’s wedding with Adrine was cancelled
The couple got married yesterday.

17. **spouse:**
A husband or wife.

**Sentence practice:**
Mr. Kazibwe separated from his spouse due to domestic violence.

18. **function:**
An official ceremony or social event.

**Sentence practice:**
Pope Paul Memorial centre is a good venue for wedding and other functions.

19. **bride:**
A woman or her wedding day or just before pr after the wedding.

**Sentence practice:**
The bride collapsed on her wedding.

20. **bridegroom/groom:**
A man on his wedding day or just before or after the wedding.

**Sentence practice:**
The bridegroom never came at the wedding ceremony.

21. **bridesmaid/maid – of – honour:**
A young woman or girl who helps a bride before or during the marriage ceremony.

**Sentence practice:**
The bridesmaid stole a cake, didn’t she?

22. **best man:**
A male friend or relative of the bridegroom at a wedding who helps him before and during the marriage ceremony.

**Sentence practice:**
The bestman danced very well.

23. **maid:**
A young woman who is not married.

**Sentence practice:**
The maids were dressed very well in red colour.

24. **matron:**
An older married woman.

**Sentence practice:**
The matron doesn't know English.

25. **fiancé:**
The man that a woman is engaged to.

**Sentence practice:**
Linda and her fiancé went for a date.

26. **fiancée:**
The woman that a man is engaged to.

**Sentence practice:**
Rwot's fiancée ran after him yesterday.

27. **bouquet:**
A bunch of flowers arranged in an attractive way so that it can be carried in a ceremony or presentation as a gift.

**Sentence practice:**
A little girl presented a bouquet to the bride on their date.
28. **marriage certificate:**  
A legal document that proves two people are married.  
**Sentence practice:**  
Their marriage certificate fell in the swimming pool.

29. **salon:**  
A shop that gives customers hair or beauty treatment that sells expensive clothes.  
**Sentence practice:**  
The salon is closed.

30. **saloon:**  
A car with four doors and a boot or trunk which is separated from the part the driver and passengers sit.  
**Sentence practice:**  
The saloon cars are expensive.

31. **bridal:**  
The bride, the groom and the people helping them at their wedding.  
**Sentence practice:**  
The bridal were shy.

32. **bridal gown/wedding gown:**  
A long dress that is worn by a bride.  
**Sentence practice:**  
So beautiful was the wedding gown that everyone admired it.

33. **bride price:**  
The amount of money and other gifts the bridegroom takes to the bride's family or parents as sign of appreciation.  
**Sentence practice:**  
If you don't pay the bride price, you won't marry my daughter.

34. **dowry:**  
The money and property that a husband must pay to his wife's family when they become married.  
**Sentence practice:**  
Before cultural marriage, the groom pays dowry.

35. **refreshment:**  
The eats and drinks that are served to people at a public event.  
**Sentence practice:**
Pancakes and water were the refreshments at Daltons and Sunday’s wedding.

36. **gifts:**
The things people give to somebody on a special occasion.

**Sentence practice:**
The bride and the groom received a lot of gifts from their friends and relatives.

37. **pageboy:**
A small boy who helps or follows a bridegroom during a wedding.

**Sentence practice:**
Amos will be a page boy at my wedding.

38. **flower girl:**
A small girl who helps or follows a bride during a wedding.

**Sentence practice:**
The flower girl wore a beautifully dress and carried a bouquet.

39. **relatives:**
People having a connection with somebody.

**Sentence practice:**
Most of our relatives attended the wedding.

40. **father – in – law.**
The father of your wife or husband.

**Sentence practice:**
Peter’s father – in – law is an old man.

41. **mother – in – law.**
The mother of your wife or husband.

**Sentence practice:**
Mary’s mother – in – law is generous.

42. **brother – in – law:**
The brother of your wife/husband or the husband of your sister.

**Sentence practice:**
Ally’s brother in law lives in Canada.

43. **sister – in – law:**
The sister of your wife or husband or the wife of your brother.

**Sentence practice:**
My sister – in – law is a very kind woman.
44. son–in–law:
The husband of your daughter.

**Sentence practice:**
My son in law bought me a new cassocks.

45. daughter–in–law:
The wife of your son.

**Sentence practice:**
Ritah is Mrs. Muwanga's daughter–in–law.

46. agreement:
An agreement, a promise or a contract made with somebody.

**Sentence practice:**
She never fulfilled her agreement with her husband.

47. entertain:
To interest and amuse somebody in order to please them.

**Sentence practice:**
Mayanjan entertained us at Matovu's wedding.

48. feast:
A large or special meal especially for a lot of people or to celebrate something.

**Sentence practice:**
They invited us on their wedding feast.

49. betrothed:
Having promised to marry somebody.

**Sentence practice:**
Ritah betrothed to be with Sekamate forever.

50. vow:
A formal and serious promise especially a religious one.

**Sentence practice:**
God hates people who break their marriage vows.

51. monogamy:
The custom of being married to one particular person at a time.

**Sentence practice:**
Most people in Uganda practice monogamy.

52. polygamy:
The custom of being married to more than one wives at the same time.

**Sentence practice:**
I am not interested in polygamy.

53. **bigamy:**
The crime of marrying somebody when you are still legally married to somebody.

**Sentence practice:**
Bigamy is a crime in Uganda.

54. **monogamist:**
A person who is married to only one person at a particular time.

**Sentence practice:**
I am a monogamist.

55. **polygamist:**
A person who is married to more than one wife at the same time.

**Sentence practice:**
Muslims are polygamists.

56. **bigamist:**
A person who is marrying somebody when they are still legally married to somebody else.

**Sentence practice:**
Is Mahad a bigamist?

57. **spinster:**
A woman who is not married and is not likely to marry.

**Sentence practice:**
Is Juliet a spinster?

58. **bachelor:**
A man who has never been married and is not likely to marry.

**Sentence practice:**
He is an eligible bachelor.

59. **concubine:**
A woman who lives with a man often in addition to his wife or wives but less important than they are.

**Sentence practice:**
Ketra is Edgar’s concubine.

60. **virgin:**
A person who has never had sex.

**Sentence practice:**
Grace is a virgin and so is Hilda.
61. **divorce:**
The legal ending of a marriage.

**Sentence practice:**
Their marriage ended in divorce in 1990.

62. **aisle:**
A passage between the rows in a church theatre, bus etc.

**Sentence practice:**
The wedding couple smartly matched through the aisle to the altar.

63. **parents:**
A person’s father and mother.

**Sentence practice:**
Did her parents attend the wedding?

64. **estranged:**
No longer living with your husband or wife.

**Sentence practice:**
She estranged her husband for a year.

65. **suitor:**
A man who wants to marry a particular woman.

**Sentence practice:**
Owen is a suitor to Denise.

66. **church:**
A building where Christians go for prayers.

**Sentence practice:**
They wedded in the church.

67. **mosque:**
A building where Muslims go for prayers.

**Sentence practice:**
Were they wedded from the mosque?

68. **service:**

- A religious rite or ritual.
- The act of serving customers in hotels, restaurants, shops are of a function.

**Sentence practice:**
The service to their wedding was fine.

69. **priest:**
A person who is qualified to perform religious duties and ceremonies in the Roman Catholic church, Anglican and Orthodox churches.

**Sentence practice:**
The priest was smartly dressed.

70. **preacher:**
A person, especially a member of the clergy who gives religious talks and often performs religious ceremonies.

**Sentence practice:**
They brought a famous preacher at their wedding.

71. **sheikh:**
An Arab prince leader or the head of an Arab family or village.

**Sentence practice:**
The sheikh presided over the marriage ceremony.

72. **beautiful:**
Being pleasant to the senses or to the mind or having beauty or being nice looking.

**Sentence practice:**
The bride was more beautiful than the bridesmaid.

73. **handsome:**
Being attractive is good looking.

**sentence practice:**
The groom was very handsome.

74. **honey moon:**
The period of time immediately following a marriage.

**Sentence practice:**
The newly wedded couple spent their honeymoon in Juba.

**Activity**
**Comprehension**
**Table (Fountain English pupils bk 7 pg 113 – 114)**
**Passage (Fountain English pupils bk 7 pg 114 – 115)**

**FUNERAL:**
**VOCABULARY DEVELOPMENT:**

Learn the pronunciations, spellings, meaning of the following words and use them to make meaningful sentences.
1. **funeral:**
   A religious ceremony usually for burying.
   **Sentence practice:**
   Did you go for the funeral?

2. **funeral rites:**
   A religious ceremony performed by a particular group of people to pay the last respects to a dead person.
   **Sentence practice:**
   We went to the village for our grandmothers funeral rites.

3. **bury:**
   To place a dead body in a grave and cover it with soil.
   **Sentence practice:**
   He was buried in the cemetery.

4. **burial:**
   The act or ceremony of burying a dead body.
   **Sentence practice:**
   His family insisted that he should be given a proper burial.

5. **mourn:**
   To feel and show sadness or grief because somebody has died.
   **Sentence practice:**
   We are mourning for all those who died in the two world wars.

6. **mourners:**
   The people who attend a funeral, especially the relatives and friends to a dead person.
   **Sentence practice:**
   The mourners could not help crying on Mr. Kawolo’s burial.

7. **widow:**
   A woman whose husband is dead.
   **Sentence practice:**
   Ketra is a widow.

8. **widower:**
   A man whose wife is dead.
   **Sentence practice:**
   Kamoga is a widower.
9. **orphan:**
A child whose parents are dead.

**Sentence practice:**
Sekabira and Kakula are helping the orphans.

10. **will:**
A legal document that says what is to happen to somebody's money and property after they have died.

**Sentence practice:**
She ought to make a will.

11. **heir:**
A male person who has the legal right to receive somebody's property, money or title when that person has died.

**Sentence practice:**
Who is the heir of this family.

12. **heiress:**
A female person who has the legal right to receive somebody's property, money or title when that person has died.

**Sentence practice:**
She is an heiress of the late Nakaziba Florence.

13. **condolences:**
The sympathy that we feel for somebody when their family member or somebody they know well has died.

**Sentence practice:**
Our condolences go to his wife and family.

14. **pay respects:**
The polite behaviors towards a dead person.

**Sentence practice:**
All mourners should pay respects to the dead.

15. **last respects:**
The final honour/respects to a dead person before burial.

**Sentence practice:**
All mourners paid their last respects to the late Bigirimana.

16. **coffin/casket:**
A wooden/metallic box in which a dead body is buried.

**Sentence practice:**
Their late grandfather was buried in an expensive coffin.

17. **bark cloth:**
   A traditional cloth used for wrapping dead bodies at cultural ceremonies.
   **Sentence practice:**
   In Buganda region, the dead are wrapped in bark cloths.

18. **corpse/dead body.**
   A dead body.
   **Sentence practice:**
   We saw many corpses in the battle field.

19. **funeral service:**
   A ceremony for burying or cremating a dead body.
   **Sentence practice:**
   The funeral service of the late minister will take place at 2:00p.m.

20. **memorial service:**
   A ceremony performed to remember somebody.
   **Sentence practice:**
   The memorial service was held at St. Peter's church.

21. **shroud:**
   A piece of cloth in which a dead is wrapped before it is buried.
   **Sentence practice:**
   Despite the fact that Juma was a rich man, he was buried in two shrouds.

22. **state funeral:**
   A special burial given to a dead person by the state.
   **Sentence practice:**
   The late Dr. Samson Kiseka was given a state funeral.

23. **requiem mass:**
   A prayer for the dead.
   **Sentence practice:**
   There will be a requiem mass for the late Dr. Samson Kiseka at Namirembe church tomorrow.

24. **ancestral grounds:**
   A place that belongs to or was inherited from your ancestors.
   **Sentence practice:**
   The late Milton Obote was buried at his ancestral grounds in Akokoro.

25. **cremate:**
To burn a dead body at a funeral service:

**Sentence practice:**
When a person dies in India, his/her body is cremated.

26. **cremation:**
The act of burning a dead body.

**Sentence practice:**
Whenever a person dies in India, cremation follows.

27. **crematorium:**
A place where dead bodies are burnt to ashes.

**Sentence practice:**
The crematorium lies in the East of the city.

28. **grave:**
A place or hole in the ground where a dead body is buried.

**Sentence practice:**
The mourners put a lot of flowers on Joshua’s grave.

29. **mortuary/morgue/funeral parlour:**
A building or room where dead bodies are kept.

**Sentence practice:**
There a lot of dead bodies in the hospital mortuary.

30. **die:**
To stop breathing and living.

**Sentence practice:**
The Bible says that everybody will die.

31. **pray:**
To speak to God either privately or in a religious ceremony in order to express love, admiration, thanks or asking for something.

**Sentence practice:**
They prayed before cremating the dead body.

32. **shock:**
The emotional or physical reaction towards a sudden situation or happening.

**Sentence practice:**
Her mother’s death came as a great shock.

33. **sympathize:**
To feel sorry for somebody showing that you understand their problems.

**Sentence practice:**
The mourners sympathized with the widow and paid school fees for the first born.

34. wail:
A long and high cry usually because of pain or sadness.
**Sentence practice:**
The women gathered around the coffin and started wailing.

35. weep:
To weep is to produce liquid such as tears or pus.
**Sentence practice:**
The widower wept for his wife.

36. bereaved:
Having lost a relative or close friend who has recently died.
**Sentence practice:**
They formed an organization caring for the bereaved families.

37. cortege:
A line of cars or people moving a long and slowly at a funeral.
**Sentence practice:**
The cortege was dressed in black.

38. deceased:
A person who has recently died.
**Sentence practice:**
Who are the parents of the deceased?

39. late:
No longer alive or living.
**Sentence practice:**
Kimera is the heir of the late Samson Kisekka.

40. eulogy/panegyric:
A speech or piece of writing praising somebody especially a deceased.
**Sentence practice:**
They never gave a eulogy about the late Amin Dada.

41. obituary:
An article about somebody’s life and achievements that is printed in the newspaper soon after they have died.
**Sentence practice:**
The obituary fell in water.

42. cry:
To produce tears from your eyes because you are unhappy or hurt.

**Sentence practice:**
The widow cried when her husband passed away.

43. **groan.**
A long deep sound of pain.

**Sentence practice:**
She groaned loudly at brother’s burial.

44. **moan:**
To make a long deep sound or cry of pain, sorrow or pleasure.

**Sentence practice:**
“Please don’t leave me”, he moaned.

45. **sob:**
To cry noisily taking sudden sharp breaths.

**Sentence practice:**
How did the children of the late sob?

46. **sorrow:**
A feeling of great sadness because something very bad has happened.

**Sentence practice:**
He experienced his sorrow at the news of her death.

47. **sad:**
Being unhappy or showing unhappiness.

**Sentence practice:**
We are very sad about his death.

48. **tragedy:**
A very sad event or situation especially one that involves death.

**Sentence practice:**
It is a tragedy that she died so young.

49. **grief:**
A feeling of great sadness especially when somebody has died.

**Sentence practice:**
She overcame the grief when her husband died.

50. **yell:**
To shout loudly for example because you are angry, somebody has died.

**Sentence practice:**
The widow yelled at the mourner.

51. **whimper:**
To make low, weak crying noises.

**Sentence practice:**
The child whimpered at her father’s burial.

52. **embalm:**
To prevent a dead body from decaying by treating it with special substances to preserve it.

**Sentence practice:**
The body of the late Keron Raphael Kabugo was embalm.

53. **entomb:**
To put a dead body in a tomb.

**Sentence practice:**
The body of the prince Senkubuye was entombed in Kasubi.

54. **epitaph:**
The words that are written or said about a dead person.

**Sentence practice:**
Prices Juliana made an epitaph before she buried her son.

55. **cemetery/grave yard/memorial park:**
An area of land where the dead are buried.

**Sentence practice:**
The cemetery is always heavily guarded.

56. **shoot:**
To fire a gun or another weapon.

**Sentence practice:**
The murderer was shot at when he was running away.

57. **hearse:**
A long vehicle used for carrying coffins or caskets.

**Sentence practice:**
The hearse was black in colour.

58. **post – mortem:**
A medical examination of the body of a dead person in order to find out the cause of their death.

**Sentence practice:**
The post – mortem on Juliana’s son revealed that he died of asthma.

59. **vigil:**
A watch kept during the normal sleeping hours over the body of a recently deceased person.
Sentence practice:
A lot of mourners were present at the vigil.

60. vigil fire:
The fire where mourners sit around mourning for a dead person.

Sentence practice:
The vigil fire lit for six days when they were mourning for the late Keron Raphael Kabugo.

61. R.I.P:
Rest in peace.

Sentence practice:
R.I.P Keron Raphael Kabugo gone too soon.

Poem; (Monitor English Course pupils book 7 page 75 – 76)
Passage: (Monitor English Course pupils book 7 page 77 – 79)
(Fountain English Book 7 pg 58 – 59)
Announcement: (Fountain English Book 7 pg 61)

Activity
Comprehension;

NOUNS:
A noun is a name of anything or a naming word.

Examples:
1. Josephine
2. Uganda
3. elephant
4. house
5. bank
   etc

Types of Nouns:
1. Proper nouns
2. Common nouns
3. Abstract nouns

Proper Nouns:
Proper nouns are particular or real or special names of people, places or other things.

Requirements for proper nouns:
All proper nouns must be written beginning with capital letter.

**Example:**

a) **Days of the week:**
1. Sunday
2. Monday
3. Tuesday
4. Wednesday
5. Thursday
6. Friday
7. Saturday

b) **Months of the year:**
1. January
2. February
3. March
4. April
5. May
6. June
7. July
8. August
9. September
10. October
11. November
12. December

c) **Important dates of the year:**
1. Ash Wednesday
2. Boxing Day
3. Christmas
4. Easter
5. Good Friday
6. Idd day
7. Independence
8. Martyr's Day
9. Heroes’ Day
10. Palm Sunday
11. Women’s Day
12. World AIDS Day
d) **Names of countries and their nationalities;**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Nationalities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Uganda</td>
<td>Ugandan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kenya</td>
<td>Kenyan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>America</td>
<td>American</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Europe</td>
<td>European</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tanzania</td>
<td>Tanzania</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>Rwandan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sudan</td>
<td>Sudanese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somalia</td>
<td>Somali</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>Chinese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

e) **Names of cities and towns;**

1. Kampala
2. Nairobi
3. Dodoma
4. Kaleerwe
5. Gayaza etc

f) **Names of rivers;**

1. River Nile
2. River Kafu
3. River Aswa
4. River Katonga
5. River Zambezi etc

g) **Names of lakes;**

1. Lake Victoria
2. Lake Albert
3. Lake Katwe
4. Lake Edward
5. Lake George etc.

h) **Names of hills;**
1. Makerere Hill
2. Mulago Hill
3. Muyenga Hill
4. Muteesa Hill
5. Namirembe Hill etc.

i) **Names of streets;**
1. William Street
2. Luwum Street
3. Ben Kiwanuka Street
4. Lumumba Avenue
5. Jinja Road etc.

j) **Names of buildings;**
1. Nandos
2. Cham lowers
3. City complex
4. Spear House
5. Crested Towers etc

k) **Names of mountains;**
1. Mountain Elgon
2. Mountain Rwenzori
3. Mountain Moroto
4. Mountain Kilimanjaro
5. Mountain Mufumbira etc

l) **Titles before names of people;**
1. Mr. Ezama
2. President Yoweri Kaguta Museveni
3. Captain Edward Francis Babu
4. Speaker Edward Sekandi
5. Honourable John Keny Lukyamuzi etc

m) Titles of newspapers;
1. Bukedde
2. The New Vision
3. The Daily Monitor
4. The Weekly Observer
5. Red Pepper etc

n) Titles of songs;
1. Nantabulirirwa – Prince Paul Job Kafeero
2. Endabada – Nandujja Annet
3. Stamina – Eddy Kenzo
4. Wanjagala – Judith Babirye
5. My Miss – Coro Finger etc

o) Titles of magazines;
1. Toto magazine
2. Sunday magazine
3. City Beat magazine
4. Flair magazine
5. Premier magazine
6. Tareh Ssita magazine etc

p) Titles of books;
1. Picfare
2. Budget
3. MK Primary English
Some proper nouns are written beginning with article “The”

i) **Names of rivers, seas and oceans;**
1. The source of River Nile
2. The Red Sea
3. The Indian Ocean
4. The Atlantic Ocean
5. The Mediterranean Sea etc

ii) **Names of mountain ranges;**
1. The Mau ranges
2. The Mufumbira ranges
3. The Atlas Mountains
4. The Cameroon Highlands
5. The Himalayas Mountains

iii) **Names of ships;**
1. The Queen Mary
2. The Victoria ship
3. The Kabalega ship
4. The Pamba ship
5. The Uhuru ship etc

iv) **Names describing places;**
1. The United States of America
2. The United Kingdom
3. The Republic of Uganda
4. The Democratic Republic of Congo
5. The Horn of Africa etc.

v) **National adjectives used in plural;**
1. The Chinese
2. The Ugandans
3. The Kenyans
4. The Rwandans
5. The Egyptians etc

**COMMON NOUNS;**
- Common nouns are names given to things of the same kind.
- Common nouns are usual, appear most, known by almost everyone and found almost everywhere.
- Common nouns are written with a small letter and written with a capital letter only when they are beginning a sentence.

**KINDS OF COMMON NOUNS;**
There are three kinds of common nouns.

a) Countable common nouns
b) Uncountable common nouns
c) Collective common nouns

**a) Countable common nouns;**

Countable common nouns are names of things we can count.

**Kinds of countable common nouns;**

i) One-word countable common nouns.

ii) Two word compound countable common nouns.

iii) Three word compound countable common nouns.

**articles;**
- All singular countable common nouns can be used with articles “a”, “an” and “the” because singular means one.
- Article “a” is used with singular common nouns that begin with consonant sound like;
  b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, w, x, y, z
Examples:
1. a boy
2. a cat
3. a dog
4. a fish
5. a girl
6. a hut
7. a jug
8. a kettle
9. a lamp
10. a monkey
11. a nail
12. a pot
13. a queen
14. a rabbit
15. a snail
16. a trap
17. a van
18. a window
19. a xylophone
20. a yam
21. a zebra

- Article “an” is used with singular countable common nouns that begin with vowel letters or vowel sounds like:
  a, e, i, o, u

Examples:
1. an apple
2. an egg
3. an ink pot  
4. an orange  
5. an umbrella  
6. an hour  
7. an honourable  
8. an M.P  
9. an X-ray  
10. an X-mas tree etc

- Article “a” can also be used with singular countable common nouns that begin with vowel letters because of their pronunciations.

**Examples:**
1. a Ugandan  
2. a European  
3. a union set  
4. a unique fashion  
5. a uniform  
6. a one-way street  
7. a Eureka can etc

- Article “the” is used with singular countable common nouns standing for a class or definite things.

**Examples:**
1. The rich  
2. The poor  
3. The sick  
4. The blind  
5. The stars  
6. The lame  
7. The deaf
8. The moon
9. The sky etc
- Article “the” can be used with ordinal numbers.

**Example:**
1. The first
2. The second
3. The third
4. The forth
5. The fifth
6. The sixth
7. The seventh
8. The eighth
9. The ninth
10. The tenth etc.

**Plural formation of countable common nouns:**

a) Some countable common nouns make their plurals by taking “s” at the end.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Boy</td>
<td>boys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Cat</td>
<td>cats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Pencil</td>
<td>pencils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Lake</td>
<td>lakes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Oven</td>
<td>ovens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Cake</td>
<td>cakes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Bun</td>
<td>buns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Girl</td>
<td>girls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Tool</td>
<td>tools</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Book</td>
<td>books</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b) Some singular countable common nouns that end with a hissing sound, take “es” in their plural forms.
**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Box</td>
<td>boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bench</td>
<td>benches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brush</td>
<td>brushes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>branch</td>
<td>branches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dish</td>
<td>dishes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>classes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torch</td>
<td>torches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pinch</td>
<td>pinches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glass</td>
<td>glasses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speech</td>
<td>speeches etc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**c)** Singular countable common nouns that end with “y” but have a consonant before it, change “y” to “i” plus “es” in their plural form.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Baby</td>
<td>babies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lorry</td>
<td>lorries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lady</td>
<td>ladies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Family</td>
<td>families</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bakery</td>
<td>bakeries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puppy</td>
<td>puppies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>library</td>
<td>libraries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Party</td>
<td>parties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fly</td>
<td>flies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>company</td>
<td>companies etc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**d)** Singular countable common nouns that end with “y” but have a vowel before it, simply take “s” only in their plural form.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monkey</td>
<td>monkeys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>donkey</td>
<td>donkeys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Day</td>
<td>days</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4. Tray  
5. chimney  
6. Key  
7. Toy  
8. Valley  
9. Ray  
10. Boy  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mango</td>
<td>mangoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hero</td>
<td>heroes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomato</td>
<td>tomatoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Echo</td>
<td>echoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cargo</td>
<td>cargoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mosquito</td>
<td>mosquitoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potato</td>
<td>potatoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buffalo</td>
<td>buffaloes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

e) Singular countable common nouns that end with “o” but have a consonant before it, take “es” in their plural form.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mango</td>
<td>mangoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hero</td>
<td>heroes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomato</td>
<td>tomatoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Echo</td>
<td>echoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cargo</td>
<td>cargoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mosquito</td>
<td>mosquitoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potato</td>
<td>potatoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buffalo</td>
<td>buffaloes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

f) Some singular countable common nouns end with “o” but simply take “s” in their plural forms.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Photo</td>
<td>photos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volcano</td>
<td>volcanos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Igloo</td>
<td>igloos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ratio</td>
<td>ratios</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kangaroo</td>
<td>kangaroos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virago</td>
<td>viragos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virgo</td>
<td>virgos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo</td>
<td>bamboos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dynamo</td>
<td>dynamos</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
g) Singular countable common nouns that end with “o” and deal with music, simple take “s” in their plural forms.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Radio</td>
<td>radios</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Disco</td>
<td>discos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Video</td>
<td>videos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Piano</td>
<td>pianos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Studio</td>
<td>studios</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Solo</td>
<td>solos</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

h) Singular countable common nouns that end with “f” of “fe” to “v” plus “es” in their plural forms.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Thief</td>
<td>thieves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Leaf</td>
<td>leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Knife</td>
<td>knives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Wife</td>
<td>wives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Shelf</td>
<td>shelves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Self</td>
<td>selves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Loaf</td>
<td>loaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Life</td>
<td>lives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Calf</td>
<td>calves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Wolf</td>
<td>wolves etc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

i) Singular countable common nouns that end with “f” but simply take “s” in their plural form.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Chief</td>
<td>chiefs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Roof</td>
<td>roofs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Chef</td>
<td>chefs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. handkerchief</td>
<td>handkerchiefs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Belief</td>
<td>beliefs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
j) Some singular countable common nouns that end with “f” simply take “s” or change “f” to “y” plus “es” in their plural forms.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dwarf</td>
<td>dwarfs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dwarf</td>
<td>dwarves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hoof</td>
<td>hoofs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hoof</td>
<td>hooves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scarf</td>
<td>scarfs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scarf</td>
<td>scarves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wharf</td>
<td>wharfs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wharf</td>
<td>wharves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>handkerchief</td>
<td>handkerchiefs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>handkerchief</td>
<td>handkerchieves</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

k) Some singular countable common nouns make their plurals by changing the inside vowels.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>man</td>
<td>men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mouse</td>
<td>mice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>woman</td>
<td>women</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tooth</td>
<td>teeth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foot</td>
<td>feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>louse</td>
<td>lice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goose</td>
<td>geese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oasis</td>
<td>oases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>policeman</td>
<td>policemen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Policewoman</td>
<td>Policewomen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
11. axes  axes
12. crisis  crises
13. basis  bases
14. aquarium  aquaria
15. fungus  fungi
16. focus  foci
17. bacterium  bacteria
18. larva  larvae
19. stimulus  stimuli
20. formula  formulae

i) Some singular countable common nouns have irregular plural forms.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>radius</td>
<td>radii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>stadium</td>
<td>stadiums or stadia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>index</td>
<td>indices or indexes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>syllabus</td>
<td>syllabuses or syllabi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>referendum</td>
<td>referendums or referenda</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Compound common nouns are nouns made of more than one word making a full meaning.

**Types of compound common nouns:**

a) Compound common nouns made of two words.

b) Compound common nouns made of three words.

- Compound common nouns made of two words make their plurals by taking “s” to the second or last word because it is the word that carries more meaning than the first one.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>cupful</td>
<td>cupfuls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>mugful</td>
<td>mugfuls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>spoonful</td>
<td>spoonfuls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>plateful</td>
<td>platefuls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>timekeeper</td>
<td>timekeepers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>gatekeeper</td>
<td>gatekeepers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>shopkeeper</td>
<td>shopkeepers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>blackboard</td>
<td>blackboards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>chalkboard</td>
<td>chalkboards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>head teacher</td>
<td>head teachers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>headmaster</td>
<td>headmasters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>headmistress</td>
<td>headmistresses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>head boy</td>
<td>head boys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>head girl</td>
<td>head girls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>houseboy</td>
<td>houseboys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>house girl</td>
<td>house girls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>house maid</td>
<td>house maids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>text book</td>
<td>text books</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>grandmother</td>
<td>grandmothers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>grandfather</td>
<td>grandfathers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>cupboard</td>
<td>cupboards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>classroom</td>
<td>classrooms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>bedroom</td>
<td>bedrooms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>bathroom</td>
<td>bathrooms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>arm chair</td>
<td>arm chairs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>handful</td>
<td>handfuls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>payment</td>
<td>payments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>dustbin</td>
<td>dustbins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
<td>class teacher</td>
<td>class teachers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
<td>post office</td>
<td>post offices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
<td>cattle keeper</td>
<td>cattle keepers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.</td>
<td>step-mother</td>
<td>step-mothers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>step-father</td>
<td>step-fathers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
<td>step-sister</td>
<td>step-sisters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.</td>
<td>step-brother</td>
<td>step-brothers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.</td>
<td>half-sister</td>
<td>half-sisters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37.</td>
<td>half-brother</td>
<td>half-brothers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38.</td>
<td>step-son</td>
<td>step-sons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Compound Common Nouns</td>
<td>Plural Forms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39.</td>
<td>step-daughter</td>
<td>step-daughters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40.</td>
<td>God-mother</td>
<td>God-mothers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41.</td>
<td>God-father</td>
<td>God-fathers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42.</td>
<td>canteen-attendant</td>
<td>canteen-attendants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43.</td>
<td>goal-keeper</td>
<td>goal-keepers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44.</td>
<td>charcoal-stove</td>
<td>charcoal-stoves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45.</td>
<td>x-ray</td>
<td>x-rays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46.</td>
<td>game-winner</td>
<td>game-winners</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47.</td>
<td>mouse-trap</td>
<td>mouse-traps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48.</td>
<td>head-phone</td>
<td>head-phones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49.</td>
<td>by-law</td>
<td>by-laws</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.</td>
<td>boy-scout</td>
<td>boy-scouts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51.</td>
<td>girl-guide</td>
<td>girl-guides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.</td>
<td>tooth-brush</td>
<td>tooth-brushes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53.</td>
<td>check-up</td>
<td>check-ups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54.</td>
<td>check-point</td>
<td>check-points</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55.</td>
<td>goal-post</td>
<td>goal-posts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56.</td>
<td>he-goat</td>
<td>he-goats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57.</td>
<td>she-goat</td>
<td>she-goats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58.</td>
<td>nanny-goat</td>
<td>nanny-goats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59.</td>
<td>billy-goat</td>
<td>billy-goats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60.</td>
<td>tape-measure</td>
<td>tape-measures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61.</td>
<td>cob-web</td>
<td>cob-webs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.</td>
<td>chess-board</td>
<td>chess-boards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63.</td>
<td>egg-plant</td>
<td>egg-plants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64.</td>
<td>passenger-plane</td>
<td>passenger-planes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65.</td>
<td>hook-worm</td>
<td>hook-worms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66.</td>
<td>tape-worm</td>
<td>tape-worms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67.</td>
<td>guinea-worm</td>
<td>guinea-worms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68.</td>
<td>earth-worm</td>
<td>earth-worms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69.</td>
<td>round-worm</td>
<td>round-worms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70.</td>
<td>pin-worm</td>
<td>pin-worms</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some compound common nouns made of two words have irregular plural forms. **Examples:**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. passenger-by</td>
<td>passengers-by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. man-servant</td>
<td>men-servant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. woman-servant</td>
<td>women-servant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. man-councilors</td>
<td>men-councilors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. woman-councilor</td>
<td>women-councilor etc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Compound common nouns made of three words.**

Compound common nouns made of three words takes “s” to the first word because it is the one that carries the most important meaning.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. father-in-law</td>
<td>fathers-in-law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. mother-in-law</td>
<td>mothers-in-law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. brother-in-law</td>
<td>brothers-in-law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. sister-in-law</td>
<td>sisters-in-law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. son-in-law</td>
<td>sons-in-law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. daughter-in-law</td>
<td>daughters-in-law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. tug-of-war</td>
<td>tugs-of-war</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. teacher-on-duty</td>
<td>teachers-on-duty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. master-on-duty</td>
<td>masters-on-duty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. head-of-state</td>
<td>heads-of-state</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. officer-in-charge</td>
<td>officer-in-charge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. ream-of-paper</td>
<td>reams-of-paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. piece-of-chalk</td>
<td>pieces-of-chalk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. stick-of-chalk</td>
<td>sticks-of-chalk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. loaf-of-bread</td>
<td>loaves-of-bread</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. slice-of-bread</td>
<td>slices-of-bread</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. master-of-ceremonies</td>
<td>masters-of-ceremonies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. prisoner-of-war</td>
<td>prisoners-of-war</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. prisoner-in-jail</td>
<td>prisoners-in-jail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. guest-of-honour</td>
<td>guests-of-honour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. commander-in-chief</td>
<td>commanders-in-chief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. cousin-in-law</td>
<td>cousins-in-law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. Head-of-Department</td>
<td>Heads-of-Department</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
24. prefect-on-duty  |  prefects-on-duty
25. maid-of-honour  |  maids-of-honour
26. member-of-staff |  members-of-staff
27. member-of-parliament |  members-of-parliament
28. nephew-in-law  |  nephews-in-law
29. niece-in-law   |  nieces-in-law
30. matron-of-honour |  matrons-of-honour

UNCOUNTABLE COMMON NOUNS;

a) Uncountable common nouns are names of things we cannot count.

Example:
1. water
2. sugar
3. paraffin
4. soil
5. salt etc.

b) Uncountable common nouns don't have any article ie; “a” or “an” but instead take “some”.

Example:
1. some water
2. some sugar
3. some paraffin
4. some rice
5. some milk etc

c) Uncountable common nouns take singular helping verbs in sentence.

Example:
1. The water in the glass is very cold.
2. The rice has been eaten.
3. The news was broadcast on radio yesterday.
4. The furniture in our class is not enough.
5. The milk in the cup is very hot. etc

d) Uncountable common nouns can be expressed in the singular form using:
- a piece
- a litre
- a kilogram
- an item etc

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Uncountable nouns</th>
<th>Singular form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. soap</td>
<td>a piece of soap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a bar of soap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. paper</td>
<td>a piece of paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a sheet of paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a ream of paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. chalk</td>
<td>a stick of chalk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a piece of chalk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a box of chalk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. food</td>
<td>a meal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. wood</td>
<td>a piece of wood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. luggage</td>
<td>a piece of luggage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. baggage</td>
<td>a piece of baggage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. furniture</td>
<td>a piece of furniture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. news</td>
<td>a piece of news</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. advice</td>
<td>a piece of advice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. music</td>
<td>a piece of music</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. information</td>
<td>a piece of information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. equipment</td>
<td>an item of equipment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. poetry</td>
<td>a poem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. land</td>
<td>a piece of land</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a plot of land</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

e) Uncountable common nouns can be expressed in the plural form as below;

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. a piece of soap</td>
<td>pieces of soap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. a bar of soap</td>
<td>bars of soap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. a piece of paper</td>
<td>pieces of paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. a sheet of paper</td>
<td>sheets of paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. a ream of paper</td>
<td>reams of paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No.</td>
<td>Singular Form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>a piece of chalk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>a stick of chalk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>a box of chalk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>a meal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>a piece of wood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>a piece of luggage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>a piece of baggage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>a piece of furniture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>a piece of news</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>a piece of advice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>a piece of land</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>a plot of land</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>a piece of music</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>a piece of information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>an item of equipment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>a poem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

f) Some uncountable common nouns don’t have plural forms when used alone.

**Examples:**

1. advice
2. information
3. music
4. furniture
5. news
6. rubbish
7. dirt
8. money
9. wood
10. milk
11. sugar
12. salt
13. water
14. luggage
15. baggage
16. fish
17. sand
18. coffee
19. cotton
20. hair
21. grass
22. dust
23. security etc

g) Some uncountable commons are single and don't have plural forms.

Examples:
1. measles
2. civics
3. mathematics
4. physics
5. Economics
6. Politics
7. scabies
8. mumps
9. sports
10. AIDS
11. cattle
12. belongings
13. goods
14. clothes
15. thanks
16. congratulations
17. surroundings
18. police
19. athletics
20. tuberculosis etc

h) Some common nouns are made of two parts ie; in pairs, therefore, take plural helping verbs when used alone.

**Examples:**
1. shoes
2. shorts
3. trousers
4. spectacles
5. glasses
6. compasses
7. dividers
8. scissors
9. binoculars
10. stockings
11. knickers
12. pants
13. pliers
14. brassiere/bra
15. gloves
16. tweezers

i) Common nouns made of two parts can be expressed in the singular form using the word “pair” and in the plural form using “pairs”.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shoes</td>
<td>shorts</td>
<td>trousers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shorts</td>
<td>trousers</td>
<td>spectacles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trousers</td>
<td>spectacles</td>
<td>glasses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glasses</td>
<td>compasses</td>
<td>dividers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compasses</td>
<td>scissors</td>
<td>binoculars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scissors</td>
<td>binoculars</td>
<td>stockings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stockings</td>
<td>binoculars</td>
<td>knickers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knickers</td>
<td>binoculars</td>
<td>pants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pants</td>
<td>binoculars</td>
<td>pliers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pliers</td>
<td>binoculars</td>
<td>brassiere/bra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brassiere/bra</td>
<td>gloves</td>
<td>tweezers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gloves</td>
<td>tweezers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PLURAL FORMATION OF POSSESSIVE NOUNS:

a) The possessive case of nouns is used to show ownership or possession.

b) In the possessive case of singular or nouns, an apostrophe (') and letters ("s") are added to the end of the noun.

**Examples:**

1. The boy’s toy.
2. The lady’s bag.
4. Senfuma’s food.
5. The teacher’s pen etc.

c) The possessive case of singular nouns ending with “s” and plural nouns ending with “s” or “es” take an apostrophe (’) at the end only.

**Examples:**

1. Moses’ ruler.
2. James’ pen.
3. Jesus’ apostles.
4. The boys’ toys.
5. Davis’ laptop.
6. The ladies’ bag.
7. The babies’ dresses etc.

d) The possessive case of plural nouns which don’t end with “s” an apostrophe (’) and letter “s” are added to the end.

**Examples:**
1. Children’s books.
2. Men’s shoes.
3. Women’s knickers.
4. People’s food.
5. Oxen’s hooves.
6. Policemen’s guns.
7. Policewomen’s uniforms.
8. Mice’s holes.
9. Geese’s eggs etc.

**YOUNG ONES OF SOME COMMON NOUNS:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>COMMON NOUNS (ANIMALS)</th>
<th>YOUNG ONES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>cow</td>
<td>calf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>sheep</td>
<td>lamb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>goat</td>
<td>kid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>dog</td>
<td>puppy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>pig</td>
<td>piglet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>cat</td>
<td>kitten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>rabbit</td>
<td>bunny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>bull</td>
<td>calf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>horse</td>
<td>foal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>ox</td>
<td>calf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>ass</td>
<td>foal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>elephant</td>
<td>calf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>lion</td>
<td>cub</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>tiger</td>
<td>cub</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>fox</td>
<td>cub</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>bear</td>
<td>cub</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>deer</td>
<td>fawn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>dare</td>
<td>leveret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>leopard</td>
<td>cub</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>wolf</td>
<td>cub</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>whale</td>
<td>calf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>frog/toad</td>
<td>tadpole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>stallion (male horse)</td>
<td>foal / calf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>mare (female horse)</td>
<td>filly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B. **COMMON NOUNS (BIRDS)**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>hen</td>
<td>chick/pullet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>cock</td>
<td>cockerel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>duck</td>
<td>duckling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>goose</td>
<td>gosling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>pigeon</td>
<td>squab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>swan</td>
<td>cygnet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>eagle</td>
<td>eaglet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>owl</td>
<td>owlet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>dove</td>
<td>nesting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>fowl</td>
<td>chicken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>hawk</td>
<td>bowet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>bird</td>
<td>nestling</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C. **COMMON NOUNS (INSECTS)**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>butterfly</td>
<td>caterpillar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>moth</td>
<td>caterpillar</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D. **COMMON NOUNS (FISH)**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
HOMES/HABITATS OF SOME COMMON NOUNS;
A habitat is a place where a particular type of animals or plants usually lives.

YOUNG ONES OF SOME COMMON NOUNS:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COMMON NOUN</th>
<th>HOME/HABITAT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. cow</td>
<td>byre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. sheep</td>
<td>pen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. goat</td>
<td>pen/shed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. dog</td>
<td>kennel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. pig</td>
<td>sty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. rabbit</td>
<td>hutch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. bull</td>
<td>byre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. horse</td>
<td>stable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. fowl</td>
<td>coop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. parrot</td>
<td>cage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. lion</td>
<td>den</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. fox</td>
<td>lair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. bear</td>
<td>den</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. eagle</td>
<td>Eyre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. hawk</td>
<td>tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. fish</td>
<td>aquarium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. bees</td>
<td>bee-hive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. pigeon</td>
<td>dove-cote</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. mouse</td>
<td>hole/nest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. owl</td>
<td>barn/tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. tiger</td>
<td>lair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. most birds</td>
<td>nests</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SOUNDS OF SOME COMMON NOUNS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COMMON NOUN</th>
<th>SOUND</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. cow</td>
<td>mows/lows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. ox</td>
<td>lows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. bull</td>
<td>bellows</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

131
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>COMMON NOUN</th>
<th>MOTION/MOVEMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>sheep</td>
<td>bleats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>goat</td>
<td>bleats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>dog</td>
<td>barks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>pig</td>
<td>grunts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>rabbit</td>
<td>squeals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>horse</td>
<td>neighs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>donkey</td>
<td>brays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>cat</td>
<td>mews/purrs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>bear</td>
<td>growls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>deer</td>
<td>bells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>elephant</td>
<td>trumpets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>frog</td>
<td>croaks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>lion</td>
<td>roars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>monkey</td>
<td>chatters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>mouse</td>
<td>squeaks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>wolf</td>
<td>howls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>snake</td>
<td>hisses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>hyena</td>
<td>screams/laughs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>hen</td>
<td>clucks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>cock</td>
<td>crows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>duck</td>
<td>squeaks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>goose</td>
<td>cackles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>turkey</td>
<td>gabbles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>parrot</td>
<td>chatters/screeches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>owl</td>
<td>hoots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>crow</td>
<td>caws</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>sparrow</td>
<td>chirps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>grasshopper</td>
<td>chirps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>dove</td>
<td>coos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>eagle</td>
<td>screams</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MOTIONS/MOVEMENT OF SOME COMMON NOUNS:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>COMMON NOUN</th>
<th>MOTION/MOVEMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>cow</td>
<td>wanders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>bull</td>
<td>charges</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MEAT/FLESH OF SOME COMMON NOUNS:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COMMON NOUNS</th>
<th>MEAT/FLESH</th>
<th>OTHER PRODUCTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. cow</td>
<td>beef</td>
<td>milk, hides, skins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. sheep</td>
<td>mutton</td>
<td>fur (wool)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. calf</td>
<td>veal</td>
<td>skins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. lamb</td>
<td>lamb</td>
<td>skins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. goat</td>
<td>goat meat</td>
<td>milk, skin, hides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. ox</td>
<td>beef</td>
<td>skins, hides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. bull</td>
<td>rabbit meat</td>
<td>skins, hides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. rabbit</td>
<td>pork (fresh meat)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. pig</td>
<td>beacon (smoked and salted)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. turkey</td>
<td>turkey</td>
<td>feathers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. other birds</td>
<td>chicken</td>
<td>feathers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PEOPLE AND THEIR OCCUPATIONS:

1. A person who looks after cattle.
   herdsman
2. A person who looks after sheep.
   shepherd
3. A person who looks after goats.
   goatherd
4. A person who kills and sells animal’s meat.
   butcher
5. A person who sells milk.  
milkman

6. A place where meat is sold.  
butcher's

7. A place where animals are slaughtered.  
abattoir  
slaughter house

8. A place where milk and its products are processed and sold.  
dairy

9. A cow that has not yet produced any calf.  
heifer

10. A bull that has not yet started mounting cows.  
bullock

11. The act of killing animals.  
butchery

12. A person who is skilled at treating animal diseases.  
veterinarian

poulterer

14. A person whose job is to manage a game park and take care of the animals in it.  
garden warden

15. A person who sells clothes made from animal fur.  
furrier

16. A person who deals in or sells cattle.  
drover

17. A person who sells fish.  
fishmonger

18. A person who catches fish from lakes or rivers.  
Fisher man.

**ABSTRACT NOUNS:**

- Abstract nouns are nouns of things which denote express ideas, feelings, states, quantity or quality.
- Abstract nouns are things can’t either, see, hear, feel, taste or smell but we only realize them or imagine them in our mind.

**FORMATION OF ABSTRACT NOUNS:**

- Abstract nouns can be formed from adjectives, verbs or other nouns.
- Most abstract nouns are formed by suffixes.
- Abstract nouns can be formed by the following suffixes.
  1. ness
  2. ce
  3. cy
  4. ty
  5. tion
  6. sion
  7. ment
  8. ship
  9. hood
  10. th
  11. ous
  12. ism
  13. hee etc

**A) FORMATION OF ABSTRACT NOUNS FROM ADJECTIVES BY ADDING “NESS”:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>ABSTRACT NOUN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. dark</td>
<td>darkness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. sad</td>
<td>sadness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. happy</td>
<td>happiness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. kind</td>
<td>kindness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. mad</td>
<td>madness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. cold</td>
<td>coldness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. hot</td>
<td>hotness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. ugly</td>
<td>ugliness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. dry</td>
<td>dryness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. clean</td>
<td>cleanliness</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
B) FORMATION OF ABSTRACT NOUNS FROM ADJECTIVES THAT END WITH “T” OR “TE” BY CHANGING THE “T” OR “TE” TO “CE” OR “CY”.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>ABSTRACT NOUN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>distant</td>
<td>distance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>innocent</td>
<td>innocence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>silent</td>
<td>silence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patient</td>
<td>patience</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>violent</td>
<td>violence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pregnant</td>
<td>pregnancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accurate</td>
<td>accuracy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urgent</td>
<td>urgency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vacant</td>
<td>vacancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accountant</td>
<td>accountancy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C) FORMATION OF ABSTRACT NOUNS FROM ADJECTIVES THAT END WITH “FUL” BY DROPPING THE “FUL”.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>ABSTRACT NOUN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hopeful</td>
<td>hope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faithful</td>
<td>faith</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peaceful</td>
<td>peace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>helpful</td>
<td>help</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>powerful</td>
<td>power</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>useful</td>
<td>use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>harmful</td>
<td>harm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>careful</td>
<td>care</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>merciful</td>
<td>mercy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beautiful</td>
<td>beauty</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D) FORMATION OF ABSTRACT NOUNS FROM ADJECTIVES WITH NO ORDER OF CHANGE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>ABSTRACT NOUN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dangerous</td>
<td>danger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>old</td>
<td>age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dead</td>
<td>death</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poisonous</td>
<td>poison</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADJECTIVE</td>
<td>ABSTRACT NOUN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>healthy</td>
<td>health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wealthy</td>
<td>wealth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coward</td>
<td>cowardice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angry</td>
<td>anger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hungry</td>
<td>hunger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thirsty</td>
<td>thirst</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**E) FORMATION OF ABSTRACT NOUNS FROM ADJECTIVES BY ADDING “TY”.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>ABSTRACT NOUN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>difficult</td>
<td>difficulty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>casual</td>
<td>casualty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loyal</td>
<td>loyalty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>royal</td>
<td>royalty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honest</td>
<td>honesty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pure</td>
<td>Purity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>able</td>
<td>ability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>safe</td>
<td>safety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possible</td>
<td>possibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poor</td>
<td>poverty</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**F) FORMATION OF ABSTRACT NOUNS FROM VERBS BY ADDING “TION”.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>ABSTRACT NOUN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>explain</td>
<td>explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pronounce</td>
<td>pronunciation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exclaim</td>
<td>exclamation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inform</td>
<td>information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repeat</td>
<td>repetition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invite</td>
<td>invitation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>congratulate</td>
<td>congratulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accommodate</td>
<td>accommodation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>introduce</td>
<td>introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compete</td>
<td>competition</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**G) FORMATION OF ABSTRACT NOUNS FROM VERBS BY ADDING “SION”.**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>ABSTRACT NOUN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>decide</td>
<td>decision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conclude</td>
<td>conclusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>confuse</td>
<td>confusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>divide</td>
<td>division</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comprehend</td>
<td>comprehension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>admit</td>
<td>admission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permit</td>
<td>permission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possess</td>
<td>possession</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>express</td>
<td>expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>provide</td>
<td>provision</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**H) FORMATION OF ABSTRACT NOUNS FROM VERBS BY ADDING “MENT”**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>ABSTRACT NOUN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>more</td>
<td>movement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>announce</td>
<td>announcement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equip</td>
<td>equipment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>develop</td>
<td>development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>improve</td>
<td>improvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advertise</td>
<td>advertisement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manage</td>
<td>management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commit</td>
<td>commitment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>defile</td>
<td>defilement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>payment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**I) FORMATION OF ABSTRACT NOUNS FORM VERBS BUT WITH NO ORDER OR CHANGE**;

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>ABSTRACT NOUN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>arrive</td>
<td>arrival</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>depart</td>
<td>departure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>choice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fail</td>
<td>failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>succeed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>assemble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>mix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>grow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>advise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>receive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>receive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>deceive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>avail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>lend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>maintain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>marry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>speak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>just</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>obey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>disobey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>hate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>enter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>refuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>exist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>begin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>lose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>sell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
<td>serve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
<td>end</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>5)</th>
<th>FORMATION OF ABSTRACT NOUNS FROM OTHER NOUNS.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>brother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>neighbour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>king</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>friend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VERB</td>
<td>ABSTRACT NOUN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>process</td>
<td>process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>produce</td>
<td>produce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>record</td>
<td>record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play</td>
<td>play</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>progress</td>
<td>progress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>water</td>
<td>water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>push</td>
<td>push</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conduct</td>
<td>conduct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>race</td>
<td>race</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repair</td>
<td>repair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dance</td>
<td>dance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work</td>
<td>work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rule</td>
<td>rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date</td>
<td>date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fish</td>
<td>fish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>share</td>
<td>share</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pull</td>
<td>pull</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rest</td>
<td>rest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>walk</td>
<td>walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride</td>
<td>ride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love</td>
<td>love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look</td>
<td>look</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drink</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRONOUNS:**
Pronouns are short words that replace nouns.

**KINDS OF PRONOUNS**

a) **personal capital pronouns** (Subjective)

These are words that replace nouns which name people or persons. They are used as subjects.

**Examples**

I  
We  
He  
It  
They

**Sentence practice**

i) I eat food daily.  
ii) We come from the same family.  
iii) He is my uncle.  
iv) It is drinking milk.  
v) She prepared a good meal.  
vi) You promised me a new dress.  
viii) They promised a new dress.

b) **OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS**

These are used as objects in sentences.

**Examples**

me  
us  
you  
her  
you  
him  
them  
it

**Sentence practice**

i) That book belongs to me.  
ii) They gave us some milk.
iii) Mutesi brought the bag to you.
iv) The nurse gave him some medicine.
v) My sister gave them mangoes.
vi) Trevor has made it.

c) **POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS**
   These are words used to show ownership /possession.
   
   **Examples**
   my - mine
   our - ours
   his - his
   their - its
   it - yours

   **Sentence practice**
   i) This is my toy. It is mine.
   ii) She is our aunt. She is ours.
   iii) Bring her blouse. It is hers.
   iv) Those are their pens. They are theirs.
   v) The baby is taking its milk.
   v) That is your umbrella. It is yours.

**DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS**
Demonstrative pronouns are words used to show things.

**Examples.**
this these
those that

**Sentence Practice**

a) This is my doll.
b) These are women's dresses.
c) That car is old.
d) Those cows belong to Bingo.

**ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS**

These pronouns are used as adjectives e.g.;

my  her  
your  their  
his  our  

**SENTENCE PRACTICE**

i) That is my bag.

ii) Are those your books?

iii) Our school is good.

iv) The children have eaten their food.

v) His shoes are torn.

**REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS**

These are formed by adding self or selves on most adjective pronouns.

**Examples**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective pronoun</th>
<th>reflexive pronoun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>my</td>
<td>myself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>our</td>
<td>ourselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your</td>
<td>yourself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your</td>
<td>yourselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>him</td>
<td>himself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>itself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>them</td>
<td>themselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ones</td>
<td>oneself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>her</td>
<td>herself</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sentence practice**

a) I did all the work myself.

b) Did you clean the dishes yourself.

c) One should respect oneself in public.
SUMMARY ON PRONOUNS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subjective pronoun</th>
<th>Objective pronoun</th>
<th>Possessive pronoun</th>
<th>Adjective pronoun</th>
<th>Reflexive pronoun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>mine</td>
<td>my</td>
<td>myself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>ours</td>
<td>our</td>
<td>ourselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>yours</td>
<td>your</td>
<td>yourself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>hers</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>ourselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>its</td>
<td>its</td>
<td>herself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>them</td>
<td>theirs</td>
<td>their</td>
<td>itself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>one</td>
<td>one's</td>
<td>ones</td>
<td>themselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one</td>
<td>him</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>oneself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>himself</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RELATIVE PRONOUNS

Examples of relative pronouns;

a) who
b) whose

c) whom
d) which
e) that

✓ Relative pronouns are pronouns used to join relative clauses.
✓ Relative clauses are sentences that show a relationship between the given subjects.

✓ “Who”, “whose” and “whom” are used for people.
✓ “Which” is used for other things.
✓ “That” is used for both people and other things.

TYPES OF RELATIVE CLAUSES:

1. Defining relative clauses.
2. Non-defining relative clauses.
a) Relative clauses are made up of two parts i.e the main clause and the relative clause.
b) The first sentence is the main clause and the second sentence is the relative clause.
c) The relative clause can be a defining relative clause or a non-defining relative clause.

1. **Defining relative clauses.**
A defining relative clause is a sentence which defines the main clause whose subject is not clear.

**Example:**
1. A dog was knocked down (main clause).
   - A dog was crossing the road. (relative clause).

**Characteristics of defining relative clauses.**
1. The subjects of the main clauses are not clear.
2. Both clauses are short.
3. When joining the two clauses, no commas are used.
4. When joining the two clauses, the relative pronoun comes immediately after the subject of the main clause.
5. The main clause is always the last part of the final answer.

   **Example:**
2. The children are sick. The children were playing in mud.
   - The children who were playing in mud are sick.

**Lesson activity:**

**NON-DEFINING RELATIVE CLAUSES:**
Non-defining relative clauses are sentences which don’t define the subject but simply give more information about it.

**Characteristics of non-defining relative clauses:**
a) The subjects of the main clauses are clear.
b) The sentences are long.
c) Commas are used when joining the two clauses.
d) When joining the two clauses, a comma comes immediately after the subject, followed by a relative pronoun, then followed by the clause as the last part of the answer.

Examples:
1. Mukasa is my teacher. His father is a pilot.
   - Mukasa, whose father is a pilot, is my teacher.
2. Mr. Wowoto was elected as a member of parliament. Mr. Wowoto displayed good leadership at the University.
   - Mr. Wowoto, who displayed good leadership at the University, was elected as a member of parliament.
3. The preposition is mentioned once in the answer.
4. The man has gone to U.K. I work for him as a secretary.
   a) The man for whom I work as a secretary, has gone to U.K.
   b) The man whom I worked for as a secretary, has gone to U.K.

Lesson activity:
THE POSSESSIVE RELATIVE PRONOUNS:
1. “Whose” is the possessive pronoun used to show ownership or possession in relative clauses.
2. “Whose” replaces personal or adjective pronoun e.g. her, his, one’s, their, my, your, our, its or the names themselves.

Examples:
1. The girl was punished. Her dress was torn at the breasts.
   - The girl, whose dress was torn at the breasts, was punished.
2. Ruth and I are crying. Our ball has been taken by Bwanika.
   - Ruth and I, whose ball has been taken by Bwanika, are crying.
3. Appolo, is sick. Appolo’s books are lost.
- Appolo, whose books are lost, is sick.

**Lesson activity:**

**SEPARATING ALREADY JOINED SENTENCES USING “WHOSE” INTO TWO.**

1. When separating sentences joined by “whose”, identify the main clause first with the main subject.
2. Identify relative clause second to begin with the correct adjective pronoun according to the subject given.
3. Finally drop the possessive relative pronoun “whose”.

**Example:**

1. Wenger, whose team was beaten by Chelsea, is a good coach.
   a) Wenger is a good coach. His team was beaten by Chelsea.
   b) Wenger is a good coach. Wenger's team was beaten by Chelsea.

**Lesson activity:**

**ADJECTIVES;**

Adjectives are words that describe or give more information about noun or pronouns.

**KINDS / TYPES OF ADJECTIVES;**

1. **Colour adjectives:**

   These are adjectives used to describe the colour of nouns or pronouns.

   **Examples:**
   - green
   - blue
   - brown
   - black
   - orange
   - red
   - pink
   - purple
   - grey
   - white
   - yellow
- maroon
- cream
- indigo etc

2. **Adjectives of size/shape.**
These are adjectives used to describe the size or shape of nouns or pronouns.

**Examples:**
- rectangular
- circular
- triangular
- tall
- short
- fat
- thin
- big
- small
- large
- young
- wide
- old
- narrow etc

3. **Adjectives of quality.**
These are adjectives used to describe the goodness or badness of nouns or pronouns.

**Examples:**
- durable
- beneficial
- perishable
- bulky
- fragile
- good
- bad
- nice
- beautify
- ugly
- handsome etc

4. **Adjectives of quantity**
These are adjectives to used to tell the number or amount of nouns or pronouns.

**Examples:**
- many
- much
- little
- empty
- full
- a lot
- one
- two etc

5. **National adjectives/adjective on nationality/proper adjectives.**
These are adjectives used to tell the nation/country/state of nouns or pronouns.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nation</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>State</th>
<th>Nationality</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Uganda</td>
<td></td>
<td>Ugandan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td></td>
<td>Rwandan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>England</td>
<td></td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Pole</td>
<td></td>
<td>Polish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Finland</td>
<td></td>
<td>Finish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Netherlands Holland</td>
<td></td>
<td>Dutch/ Hollander</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Greece</td>
<td></td>
<td>Greek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Congo</td>
<td></td>
<td>Congolese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>China</td>
<td></td>
<td>Chinese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Japan</td>
<td></td>
<td>Japanese</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. **Participle adjectives;**
These are participle verbs used as adjectives to describe nouns or pronouns.

**Examples:**
- broken
- stole
- rotten
- eaten
- written
- interesting
- exciting
- boring
- pleasing
- annoying

**Sentence practice:**

a) Wambi stepped on a broken bottle and injured her foot.

b) The mad man has eaten the rotten water melon.

c) You should report to the teacher with a written apology.

d) The customer has paid for the eaten food.

e) The stolen books were found later by the head teacher.

7. **Compound adjectives:**

These are adjectives made of two or more words and used to describe nouns or pronouns.

**Examples:**

- long-armed/horned
- short-sleeved
- long-sleeved
- short-horned
- long-legged
- short-legged etc

**FORMATION OF OTHER ADJECTIVES:**

We can form other adjectives by the following suffixes.

- y
- en
- ful
- less
- ible
- ive
- ar
- ed
- ish
- able
Most of the other adjectives are formed from nouns/verbs.

Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rain</td>
<td>rainy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cloud</td>
<td>cloudy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wind</td>
<td>windy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sun</td>
<td>sunny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dirt</td>
<td>dirty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dust</td>
<td>dusty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>water</td>
<td>watery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salt</td>
<td>salty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sugar</td>
<td>sugary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blood</td>
<td>bloody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gold</td>
<td>golden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>care</td>
<td>careful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hope</td>
<td>hopeful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faith</td>
<td>faithful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pain</td>
<td>painful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>care</td>
<td>careless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hope</td>
<td>hopeless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>use</td>
<td>useless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pain</td>
<td>painless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mercy</td>
<td>merciless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terror</td>
<td>terrible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terrorists</td>
<td>terrible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horror</td>
<td>horrible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reverse</td>
<td>reversible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>act</td>
<td>active</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expense</td>
<td>expensive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>creation</td>
<td>creative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attraction</td>
<td>attractive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attention</td>
<td>attentive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reaction</td>
<td>reactive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rectangle</td>
<td>rectangular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOUN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>dirty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>bleed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>care</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>hope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>terrorize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>reverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>create</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>attract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>attend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>react</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>regulate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>circular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>deduct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>punch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>reduce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>slap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>corrupt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>fool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>cure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>comfort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>punish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>know</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>endanger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
<td>poison</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
<td>encourage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
<td>beatify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.</td>
<td>enlarge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>broaden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
<td>widen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.</td>
<td>sadden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.</td>
<td>madden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37.</td>
<td>manage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38.</td>
<td>perish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39.</td>
<td>tighten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40.</td>
<td>loosen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DEGREES OF COMPARISONS OF ADJECTIVES**

Adjectives are compared in there degrees.
a) **The simple degree.**
- The simple degree is a form of comparison of adjectives talking about only one subject, object, noun, pronoun or group.
- The simple degree can be either positive or negative.

b) **The comparative degree.**
- The comparative degree is a form of comparison of adjective talking about two subjects, objects, nouns pronouns or groups.

c) **The superlative degree.**
- The superlative degree is a form of comparison of adjectives talking about more than two subjects, objects, nouns, pronouns or groups.

**REGULAR COMPARISONS OF ADJECTIVES;**

1. Regular comparisons of adjectives with “r” and “st” in their comparative and superlative degree respectively.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMPLE</th>
<th>COMPARATIVE</th>
<th>SUPERLATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. fine</td>
<td>finer</td>
<td>finest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. large</td>
<td>larger</td>
<td>largest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. wide</td>
<td>wider</td>
<td>widest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. safe</td>
<td>safer</td>
<td>safest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. wise</td>
<td>wiser</td>
<td>wisest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. white</td>
<td>whiter</td>
<td>whitest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. loose</td>
<td>looser</td>
<td>loosest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. nice</td>
<td>nicer</td>
<td>nicest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. rude</td>
<td>ruder</td>
<td>rudest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. simple</td>
<td>simpler</td>
<td>simplest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Regular comparisons of adjectives with “er” in the comparative degree and “est”.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMPLE</th>
<th>COMPARATIVE</th>
<th>SUPERLATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. small</td>
<td>smaller</td>
<td>smallest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. tall</td>
<td>taller</td>
<td>tallest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. short</td>
<td>shorter</td>
<td>shortest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. Regular comparisons of adjectives that have a CVC order consonant vowel consonant of the last three letters, double the last consonant and take “er” in the comparative degree and “est” in the superlative degree.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMPLE</th>
<th>COMPARATIVE</th>
<th>SUPERLATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>big</td>
<td>bigger</td>
<td>biggest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fat</td>
<td>fatter</td>
<td>fattest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thin</td>
<td>thinner</td>
<td>thinnest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>redder</td>
<td>reddest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mad</td>
<td>madder</td>
<td>maddest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sad</td>
<td>sadder</td>
<td>saddest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glad</td>
<td>gladder</td>
<td>gladdest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hot</td>
<td>hotter</td>
<td>hottest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wet</td>
<td>wetter</td>
<td>wettest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dim</td>
<td>dimmer</td>
<td>dimmest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Regular comparisons of adjectives that end with “y” but drop it and take “ier” in the comparative and “iest” in the superlative degree.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMPLE</th>
<th>COMPARATIVE</th>
<th>SUPERLATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ugly</td>
<td>uglier</td>
<td>ugliest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heavy</td>
<td>heavier</td>
<td>heaviest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dirty</td>
<td>dirtier</td>
<td>dirtiest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shabby</td>
<td>shabbier</td>
<td>shabbiest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dusty</td>
<td>dustier</td>
<td>dustiest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happy</td>
<td>happier</td>
<td>happiest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>busy</td>
<td>busier</td>
<td>busiest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Regular comparisons of adjectives that have more than two syllables take more or less in the comparative degree and most or least in the superlative degree.

Syllables are words units into which words are divided.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMPLE</th>
<th>COMPARATIVE</th>
<th>SUPERLATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>beautiful</td>
<td>more beautiful</td>
<td>most beautiful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>less beautiful</td>
<td>least beautiful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ignorant</td>
<td>more ignorant</td>
<td>most ignorant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>less ignorant</td>
<td>least ignorant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>important</td>
<td>more important</td>
<td>most important</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>less important</td>
<td>least important</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interesting</td>
<td>more interesting</td>
<td>most interesting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>less interesting</td>
<td>least interesting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comfortable</td>
<td>more comfortable</td>
<td>most comfortable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>less comfortable</td>
<td>least comfortable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>careless</td>
<td>more careless</td>
<td>most careless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>less careless</td>
<td>least careless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wonderful</td>
<td>more wonderful</td>
<td>most wonderful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>less wonderful</td>
<td>least wonderful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>careful</td>
<td>more careful</td>
<td>most careful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>less careful</td>
<td>least careful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>handsome</td>
<td>more handsome</td>
<td>most handsome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>less handsome</td>
<td>least handsome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>famous</td>
<td>more famous</td>
<td>most famous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>less famous</td>
<td>least famous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delicious</td>
<td>more delicious</td>
<td>most delicious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>less delicious</td>
<td>least delicious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>industrious</td>
<td>more industrious</td>
<td>most industrious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>less industrious</td>
<td>least industrious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficult</td>
<td>more difficult</td>
<td>most difficult</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Less Difficult

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>14.</th>
<th>dangerous</th>
<th>more dangerous</th>
<th>least dangerous</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>less dangerous</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>15.</th>
<th>hardworking</th>
<th>more hardworking</th>
<th>most hardworking</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>less hardworking</td>
<td></td>
<td>least hardworking</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IRREGULAR COMPARISONS OF ADJECTIVES

Irregular comparisons of adjectives are comparisons that have no order of change in their comparative and superlative degree.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMPLE</th>
<th>COMPARATIVE</th>
<th>SUPERLATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. good</td>
<td>better</td>
<td>best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. bad</td>
<td>worse</td>
<td>worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. ill</td>
<td>worse</td>
<td>worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. little</td>
<td>less</td>
<td>least</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>littler</td>
<td>littlest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. many</td>
<td>more</td>
<td>most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. much</td>
<td>more</td>
<td>most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. a lot</td>
<td>more</td>
<td>most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. well</td>
<td>better</td>
<td>most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. far</td>
<td>farther</td>
<td>farthest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>further</td>
<td>furthest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. old</td>
<td>older</td>
<td>oldest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>elder</td>
<td>eldest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ORDER OF ADJECTIVES:

For one to get the correct order of adjectives in a sentence, one may use the following formula: (DNOSSACOMKN)

This formula stands for:

- D - Determinant e.g. He has ---, I met-----, They bought-----,
- N - Number e.g. two, five, several, many, a or an etc
- O - Opinion e.g. beautiful, stupid, bad, good, nice, poor, interesting etc
S - Shape e.g. circular, oval, cylindrical, rectangular, flat etc
S - Size e.g. small, big, huge, large, tiny etc
A - Age e.g. old, young, ancient, new, current etc
C - Colour e.g. blue, red, white, reddish, whitish, black, etc
O - Origin e.g. American, Japanese, Chinese, Ugandan, Rwandan etc
M - Material e.g. leather, plastic, metallic, rubber, woolen, wooden etc
K - Kind/use e.g. milking, dancing, playing, swimming, wearing etc
N - Noun e.g. stool, table, gown, costume, cup, bed, chair etc

Example:
Rewrite the following sentences without using ‘and’, ‘who’, ‘which’ or ‘that’.
1. The ladies are beautiful. The ladies are ten. The ladies are brown. The ladies are young. The ladies are from Asia.
2. I bought a shirt. It was large. It was blue. It was made from Korea.
3. The ladies are industrious. They are ten. They are brown. They are old. They are red eyed. They are from Rwanda.
4. She brought children. They were young. They were dark-skinned. They were ignorant. They were slim. They were from England.
5. I solved numbers. They were good. They were fifteen.
6. I bought a shirt. It was long sleeved. It was red. It was soft. It was made from Italy. It was old.
7. Our head teacher bought desks. They were twenty in number. They were made of wood. They were for Primary Seven.
8. The policeman arrested a thief. The thief was from Africa. The thief was slender. The thief was stupid.
9. My father bought blankets. They were soft. They were made of wool. They were three.
10. The monkey jumped down the mountain. The monkey was brown. The monkey was clever. The monkey was long-tailed. The monkey was young.

MORE ABOUT “OLD” AND “FAR”
- old-elder-eldest are used when referring to people who are related.
- old-older-oldest are used when referring to people who are not related or other things.
- far-father-farthest are used with distance.
- far-further-furthest are used with time.

**Sentence practice.**  
**OPPOSITES OF ADJECTIVES:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>OPPOSITE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1. rough  | smooth
           | calm                      |
| 2. ugly   | beautiful
           | handsome                  |
| 3. easy   | difficult                 |
| 4. simple | complex
           | complicated               |
| 5. dry    | wet                       |
| 6. hot    | cold                      |
| 7. warm   | cool                      |
| 8. front  | back                      |
| 9. dead   | alive                     |
| 10. busy  | idle                      |
| 11. sweet | sour
           | bitter                    |
| 12. bright| dull                      |
| 13. true  | false                     |
| 14. quick | slow                      |
| 15. near  | Far/distant               |
| 16. poor  | Rich/wealthy              |
| 17. course| fine                      |
| 18. proud | humble                    |
| 19. inside| outside                   |
| 20. loud  | soft                      |
| 21. kind  | cruel
           | unkind                    |
| 22. polite| rude
<pre><code>       | impolite                  |
</code></pre>
<p>| 23. upper | lower                     |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>OPPOSITE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>better</td>
<td>worse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>best</td>
<td>worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quiet</td>
<td>noisy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>silent</td>
<td>noisy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>old</td>
<td>young</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>junior</td>
<td>senior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long</td>
<td>short</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tall</td>
<td>short</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modern</td>
<td>ancient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slender</td>
<td>stout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>robust</td>
<td>feeble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>delicate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clever</td>
<td>stupid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wise</td>
<td>foolish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first</td>
<td>last</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fat</td>
<td>thin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>lean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thick</td>
<td>thin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**OPPOSITES OF ADJECTIVES;**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>OPPOSITE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>many</td>
<td>few</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>much</td>
<td>little</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fresh</td>
<td>stale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weak</td>
<td>strong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>open</td>
<td>closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this</td>
<td>that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>these</td>
<td>those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>morning</td>
<td>evening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>giant</td>
<td>dwarf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happy</td>
<td>unhappy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>public</td>
<td>private</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lazy</td>
<td>Industrious/hardworking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raw</td>
<td>ripe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>spacious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>common</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>familiar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>absent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>wrong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>correct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>top</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>cheap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>wide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>broad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>clean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>smart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>empty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>high</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
<td>active</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
<td>inner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
<td>internal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.</td>
<td>generous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>coward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
<td>former</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.</td>
<td>small</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.</td>
<td>smart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37.</td>
<td>early</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38.</td>
<td>light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39.</td>
<td>bright</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40.</td>
<td>all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41.</td>
<td>straight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42.</td>
<td>deep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43.</td>
<td>black</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44.</td>
<td>summer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45.</td>
<td>wild</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46.</td>
<td>right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47.</td>
<td>acute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48.</td>
<td>natural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49.</td>
<td>cloudy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.</td>
<td>vacant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51.</td>
<td>permanent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.</td>
<td>foreign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53.</td>
<td>leveled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54.</td>
<td>dynamic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55.</td>
<td>hostile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56.</td>
<td>eager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57.</td>
<td>compulsory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58.</td>
<td>transparent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59.</td>
<td>decent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60.</td>
<td>guilty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61.</td>
<td>maximum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.</td>
<td>legal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63.</td>
<td>lawful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64.</td>
<td>lovely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65.</td>
<td>singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66.</td>
<td>stationary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67.</td>
<td>sober</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68.</td>
<td>genuine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69.</td>
<td>majority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70.</td>
<td>grateful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71.</td>
<td>powerful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72.</td>
<td>rigid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73.</td>
<td>regular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74.</td>
<td>obligatory</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sentence practice;

VERBS;
A verb is a doing word or a word with a lot of functions it performs in a sentence.

KINDS OF VERBS;
a) Regular verbs;
Regular verbs are doing words that take “d”, “ed” and “t” in their past forms.

Examples;

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present simple</th>
<th>Present continuous</th>
<th>Past simple</th>
<th>Perfect or past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>arrive</td>
<td>arriving</td>
<td>arrived</td>
<td>arrived</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>use</td>
<td>using</td>
<td>used</td>
<td>used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>dance</td>
<td>dancing</td>
<td>danced</td>
<td>danced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>measure</td>
<td>measuring</td>
<td>measured</td>
<td>measured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>receive</td>
<td>receiving</td>
<td>received</td>
<td>received</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Present simple</td>
<td>Present continuous</td>
<td>Past simple</td>
<td>Perfect or past participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>complete</td>
<td>completing</td>
<td>completed</td>
<td>completed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>type</td>
<td>typing</td>
<td>typed</td>
<td>typed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>retire</td>
<td>retiring</td>
<td>retired</td>
<td>retired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>revise</td>
<td>revising</td>
<td>revised</td>
<td>revised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>refuse</td>
<td>refusing</td>
<td>refused</td>
<td>refused</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>travel</td>
<td>traveling</td>
<td>traveled</td>
<td>travelled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>perform</td>
<td>performing</td>
<td>performed</td>
<td>performed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>abstain</td>
<td>abstaining</td>
<td>abstained</td>
<td>abstained</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>clap</td>
<td>clapping</td>
<td>clapped</td>
<td>clapped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>appear</td>
<td>appearing</td>
<td>appeared</td>
<td>appeared</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>jump</td>
<td>Jumping</td>
<td>jumped</td>
<td>jumped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>pick</td>
<td>picking</td>
<td>picked</td>
<td>picked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>look</td>
<td>looking</td>
<td>looked</td>
<td>looked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>plan</td>
<td>planning</td>
<td>planed</td>
<td>planned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>absorb</td>
<td>absorbing</td>
<td>absorbed</td>
<td>absorbed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>burn</td>
<td>burning</td>
<td>burned</td>
<td>burnt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>learn</td>
<td>learning</td>
<td>learned</td>
<td>learnt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>mean</td>
<td>meaning</td>
<td>meant</td>
<td>meant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>deal</td>
<td>dealing</td>
<td>dealt</td>
<td>dealt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>dream</td>
<td>dreaming</td>
<td>dreamt</td>
<td>dreamt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>spoil</td>
<td>spoiling</td>
<td>spoilt</td>
<td>spoilt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>leap</td>
<td>leaping</td>
<td>leapt</td>
<td>leapt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>lean</td>
<td>leaning</td>
<td>leant</td>
<td>leant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**B) IRREGULAR VERBS;**
Irregular verbs are doing words whose past simple and past participle have no order of change.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present simple</th>
<th>Present continuous</th>
<th>Past simple</th>
<th>Perfect or past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>sweep</td>
<td>sweeping</td>
<td>swept</td>
<td>swept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>keep</td>
<td>keeping</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td>kept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>sleeping</td>
<td>slept</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>weep</td>
<td>weeping</td>
<td>wept</td>
<td>wept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>kneel</td>
<td>kneeling</td>
<td>knelt</td>
<td>knelt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. feel</td>
<td>feeling</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. leave</td>
<td>leaving</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>left</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. spell</td>
<td>spelling</td>
<td>spelt</td>
<td>spelt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. spill</td>
<td>spilling</td>
<td>spilt</td>
<td>spilt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. meet</td>
<td>meeting</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>met</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. spend</td>
<td>spending</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. sit</td>
<td>sitting</td>
<td>sat</td>
<td>sat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. send</td>
<td>sending</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. fight</td>
<td>fighting</td>
<td>fought</td>
<td>fought</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. build</td>
<td>building</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>built</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. go</td>
<td>going</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>gone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. come</td>
<td>coming</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>came</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. break</td>
<td>breaking</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. tear</td>
<td>tearing</td>
<td>tore</td>
<td>torn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. wear</td>
<td>wearing</td>
<td>wore</td>
<td>worn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. buy</td>
<td>buying</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. lend</td>
<td>lending</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. freeze</td>
<td>freeze</td>
<td>froze</td>
<td>frozen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. find</td>
<td>finding</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>found</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. give</td>
<td>giving</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>given</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. drink</td>
<td>drinking</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. do</td>
<td>doing</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>done</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. see</td>
<td>seeing</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td>seen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. sink</td>
<td>sinking</td>
<td>sank/sunk</td>
<td>sunk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25. lead</td>
<td>leading</td>
<td>led</td>
<td>led</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26. sing</td>
<td>singing</td>
<td>sang</td>
<td>sung</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27. be</td>
<td>being</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>been</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28. ring</td>
<td>ringing</td>
<td>rang</td>
<td>rung</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29. wring</td>
<td>wringing</td>
<td>wrung</td>
<td>wrung</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30. sting</td>
<td>stingling</td>
<td>stung</td>
<td>stung</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31. dig</td>
<td>digging</td>
<td>dug</td>
<td>dug</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32. sling</td>
<td>slinging</td>
<td>slung</td>
<td>slung</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33. stick</td>
<td>sticking</td>
<td>stuck</td>
<td>stuck</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34. strike</td>
<td>striking</td>
<td>struck</td>
<td>struck</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35. cling</td>
<td>clinging</td>
<td>clung</td>
<td>clung</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41.</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>stringing</td>
<td>strung</td>
<td>strung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42.</td>
<td>know</td>
<td>knowing</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43.</td>
<td>grow</td>
<td>growing</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td>grown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44.</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>running</td>
<td>ran</td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45.</td>
<td>become</td>
<td>becoming</td>
<td>became</td>
<td>became</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46.</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td>eating</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47.</td>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beating</td>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48.</td>
<td>bite</td>
<td>biting</td>
<td>bit</td>
<td>bitten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49.</td>
<td>throw</td>
<td>throwing</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>thrown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.</td>
<td>sell</td>
<td>selling</td>
<td>sold</td>
<td>sold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51.</td>
<td>seek</td>
<td>seeking</td>
<td>sought</td>
<td>sought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.</td>
<td>choose</td>
<td>choosing</td>
<td>chose</td>
<td>chosen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53.</td>
<td>bleed</td>
<td>bleeding</td>
<td>bled</td>
<td>bled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54.</td>
<td>breed</td>
<td>breeding</td>
<td>bred</td>
<td>bred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55.</td>
<td>feed</td>
<td>feeding</td>
<td>fed</td>
<td>fed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56.</td>
<td>shrink</td>
<td>shrinking</td>
<td>shrunk</td>
<td>shrunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57.</td>
<td>spring</td>
<td>springing</td>
<td>sprung</td>
<td>sprung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58.</td>
<td>shine</td>
<td>shining</td>
<td>shone</td>
<td>shone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59.</td>
<td>grind</td>
<td>grinding</td>
<td>ground</td>
<td>ground</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60.</td>
<td>wind</td>
<td>winding</td>
<td>wound</td>
<td>wound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61.</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>reading</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.</td>
<td>cast</td>
<td>casting</td>
<td>cast</td>
<td>cast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63.</td>
<td>broadcast</td>
<td>broadcasting</td>
<td>broadcast</td>
<td>broadcast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64.</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurting</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65.</td>
<td>burst</td>
<td>bursting</td>
<td>burst</td>
<td>burst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66.</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>costing</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67.</td>
<td>spit</td>
<td>spiting</td>
<td>spat</td>
<td>spat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68.</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>putting</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69.</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cutting</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70.</td>
<td>hut</td>
<td>hutting</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71.</td>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swimming</td>
<td>swam</td>
<td>swam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72.</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shutting</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73.</td>
<td>set</td>
<td>setting</td>
<td>set</td>
<td>set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74.</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>letting</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75.</td>
<td>bet</td>
<td>betting</td>
<td>bet/botted</td>
<td>bet/botted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76.</td>
<td>knit</td>
<td>knitting</td>
<td>knitted/knit</td>
<td>knit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77.</td>
<td>rot</td>
<td>rotting</td>
<td>rotted</td>
<td>rotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78.</td>
<td>get</td>
<td>getting</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79.</td>
<td>begin</td>
<td>beginning</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80.</td>
<td>fit</td>
<td>fitting</td>
<td>fit/fitted</td>
<td>fit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81.</td>
<td>skip</td>
<td>skipping</td>
<td>skipped</td>
<td>skipped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82.</td>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgetting</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83.</td>
<td>win</td>
<td>winning</td>
<td>win</td>
<td>won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84.</td>
<td>forbid</td>
<td>forbidding</td>
<td>forbade</td>
<td>forbidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85.</td>
<td>say</td>
<td>saying</td>
<td>said</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86.</td>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drawing</td>
<td>drew</td>
<td>drawn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87.</td>
<td>sow</td>
<td>sowing</td>
<td>sowed</td>
<td>sown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88.</td>
<td>sew</td>
<td>sewing</td>
<td>sewed</td>
<td>sewn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89.</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td>sawing</td>
<td>sawn</td>
<td>sawn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90.</td>
<td>blow</td>
<td>blowing</td>
<td>blew</td>
<td>blown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91.</td>
<td>lay</td>
<td>laying</td>
<td>laid</td>
<td>laid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92.</td>
<td>lie</td>
<td>lying</td>
<td>lay</td>
<td>lain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93.</td>
<td>show</td>
<td>showing</td>
<td>showed</td>
<td>shown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94.</td>
<td>pay</td>
<td>paying</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95.</td>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flying</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96.</td>
<td>tie</td>
<td>tying</td>
<td>tied</td>
<td>tied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>97.</td>
<td>die</td>
<td>dying</td>
<td>died</td>
<td>died</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98.</td>
<td>tread</td>
<td>treading</td>
<td>trod</td>
<td>trodden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99.</td>
<td>stride</td>
<td>striding</td>
<td>strode</td>
<td>stridden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100.</td>
<td>hide</td>
<td>hiding</td>
<td>hid</td>
<td>hidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101.</td>
<td>bear</td>
<td>bearing</td>
<td>bore</td>
<td>born</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102.</td>
<td>catch</td>
<td>catching</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>caught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103.</td>
<td>drive</td>
<td>driving</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104.</td>
<td>fall</td>
<td>falling</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>fallen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105.</td>
<td>flee</td>
<td>fleeing</td>
<td>fled</td>
<td>fled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>106.</td>
<td>forsake</td>
<td>forsaking</td>
<td>forsook</td>
<td>forsaken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.</td>
<td>bear</td>
<td>bearing</td>
<td>bore</td>
<td>borne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108.</td>
<td>hang</td>
<td>hanging</td>
<td>hung</td>
<td>hung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109.</td>
<td>hold</td>
<td>holding</td>
<td>held</td>
<td>held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110.</td>
<td>mow</td>
<td>mowing</td>
<td>mowed</td>
<td>mowed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111.</td>
<td>rise</td>
<td>rising</td>
<td>rose</td>
<td>risen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112.</td>
<td>shake</td>
<td>shaking</td>
<td>shook</td>
<td>shaken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113.</td>
<td>slay</td>
<td>slaying</td>
<td>slew</td>
<td>slain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114.</td>
<td>speak</td>
<td>speaking</td>
<td>spoke</td>
<td>spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115.</td>
<td>steal</td>
<td>stealing</td>
<td>stole</td>
<td>stolen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116.</td>
<td>swear</td>
<td>swearing</td>
<td>swore</td>
<td>sworn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117.</td>
<td>swell</td>
<td>swelling</td>
<td>swelled</td>
<td>swollen or swelled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118.</td>
<td>take</td>
<td>taking</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119.</td>
<td>teach</td>
<td>teaching</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td>taught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.</td>
<td>think</td>
<td>thinking</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.</td>
<td>bring</td>
<td>bringing</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.</td>
<td>bend</td>
<td>bending</td>
<td>bent</td>
<td>bent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.</td>
<td>shoot</td>
<td>shooting</td>
<td>shot</td>
<td>shot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124.</td>
<td>smell</td>
<td>smelling</td>
<td>smelt</td>
<td>smelt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125.</td>
<td>weave</td>
<td>weaving</td>
<td>wove/weaved</td>
<td>woven/weaved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126.</td>
<td>thrive</td>
<td>thriving</td>
<td>thrived/throve</td>
<td>thriven/thrived</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>127.</td>
<td>thrust</td>
<td>thrusting</td>
<td>thrust</td>
<td>thrust</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128.</td>
<td>wake</td>
<td>waking</td>
<td>woke</td>
<td>woken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129.</td>
<td>understand</td>
<td>understanding</td>
<td>understood</td>
<td>understood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130.</td>
<td>write</td>
<td>writing</td>
<td>wrote</td>
<td>written</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ALL ABOUT “LAY” AND “LIE”**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present simple</th>
<th>Present continuous</th>
<th>Past simple</th>
<th>Perfect or past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>lay</td>
<td>laying</td>
<td>laid</td>
<td>laid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>lie (rest)</td>
<td>lying</td>
<td>lay</td>
<td>lain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>lie (deceive)</td>
<td>lying</td>
<td>lied</td>
<td>lied</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. lay:
- To place or to put something or someone somewhere.
  Sentence practice.
  a) The hen laid an egg yesterday.

2. **Lie**;
- To put oneself on a surface in a flat horizontal position.
- To speak falsely or to deceive.

**Sentence practice:**

**FORMATION OF VERBS;**
- Some verbs are formed from nouns and adjectives using prefixes and suffixes.

a) **Formation of verbs from nouns.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUNS</th>
<th>VERBS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. ability</td>
<td>enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. anger</td>
<td>anger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. brass</td>
<td>braze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. beauty</td>
<td>beautify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. breath</td>
<td>breathe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. belief</td>
<td>believe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. cloth</td>
<td>clothe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. company</td>
<td>accompany</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. courage</td>
<td>encourage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. creation</td>
<td>create</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. clearance</td>
<td>clear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. custom</td>
<td>customize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. division</td>
<td>divide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. depth</td>
<td>deepen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. danger</td>
<td>endanger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. deed</td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. endurance</td>
<td>endure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. drama</td>
<td>dramatize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. electricity</td>
<td>electrify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. friend</td>
<td>befriend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. food</td>
<td>feed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. freedom</td>
<td>free</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. fruit</td>
<td>fruitify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>frustration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>glass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>glory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>gold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
<td>judgment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
<td>joy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
<td>knee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.</td>
<td>light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>liquid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
<td>loss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.</td>
<td>notice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.</td>
<td>peril</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37.</td>
<td>pleasure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38.</td>
<td>purity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39.</td>
<td>power</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40.</td>
<td>person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41.</td>
<td>peace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42.</td>
<td>product</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43.</td>
<td>resolution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44.</td>
<td>roll</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45.</td>
<td>solid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46.</td>
<td>solution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47.</td>
<td>strength</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48.</td>
<td>sweet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49.</td>
<td>speech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.</td>
<td>suspicion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51.</td>
<td>strife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.</td>
<td>strike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53.</td>
<td>song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54.</td>
<td>sight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55.</td>
<td>tale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56.</td>
<td>trust</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57.</td>
<td>terrorist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58.</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
b) Formation of verbs from adjectives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>VERBS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. angry</td>
<td>anger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. able</td>
<td>enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. beautiful</td>
<td>beautify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. comparative</td>
<td>compare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. clear</td>
<td>clarify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. clean</td>
<td>clean / cleanse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. calm</td>
<td>calm / becalm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. certain</td>
<td>certify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. cheap</td>
<td>cheapen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. deep</td>
<td>deepen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. equal</td>
<td>equalize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. feeble</td>
<td>enfeeble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. fast</td>
<td>fasten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. fine</td>
<td>refine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. fertile</td>
<td>fertilize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. hard</td>
<td>harden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. hot</td>
<td>heat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. humble</td>
<td>humiliate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. lively</td>
<td>enlive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. low</td>
<td>lower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. loose</td>
<td>loosen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. long</td>
<td>lengthen / elongate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. new</td>
<td>renew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. noble</td>
<td>ennoble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25. pure</td>
<td>purify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26. rich</td>
<td>enrich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27. safe</td>
<td>save</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28. strong</td>
<td>strengthen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29. stupid</td>
<td>stupidise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30. smooth</td>
<td>smooth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
<td>sad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.</td>
<td>mad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>simple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
<td>solemn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.</td>
<td>fat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sentence practice**

c) **Infinitive verbs;**

- Infinitive verbs are doing words preceded by a preposition “t”.
- Infinitive verbs are indefinite but formed from definite verbs.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DEFINITE</th>
<th>INDEFINITE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. talk</td>
<td>to talk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. eat</td>
<td>to eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. clap</td>
<td>to clap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. sing</td>
<td>to sing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. kill</td>
<td>to kill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. run</td>
<td>to run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. walk</td>
<td>to walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. rape</td>
<td>to rape</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. urinate</td>
<td>to urinate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. dance</td>
<td>to dance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. read</td>
<td>to read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. write</td>
<td>to write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. feel</td>
<td>to feel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. pray</td>
<td>to pray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. attract</td>
<td>to attract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. jump</td>
<td>to jump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. fly</td>
<td>to fly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. fight</td>
<td>to fight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. give</td>
<td>to give</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. cry</td>
<td>to cry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. begin</td>
<td>to begin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. see</td>
<td>to see</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

172
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>GERUND</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>talk</td>
<td>talking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td>eating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>clap</td>
<td>clapping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>sing</td>
<td>singing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>kill</td>
<td>killing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>running</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>walk</td>
<td>walking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>rape</td>
<td>raping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>urinate</td>
<td>urinating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>dance</td>
<td>dancing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>write</td>
<td>writing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>Feel</td>
<td>feeling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>pray</td>
<td>praying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>attract</td>
<td>attracting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>jump</td>
<td>jumping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>fight</td>
<td>fighting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>give</td>
<td>giving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>cry</td>
<td>crying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>begin</td>
<td>beginning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>see</td>
<td>seeing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>bend</td>
<td>bending</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>pull</td>
<td>pulling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>share</td>
<td>sharing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>hear</td>
<td>hearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>putting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>fix</td>
<td>fixing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
<td>squeeze</td>
<td>squeezing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
<td>push</td>
<td>pushing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
<td>allow</td>
<td>allowing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.</td>
<td>praise</td>
<td>praising</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>keep</td>
<td>keeping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.</td>
<td>cover</td>
<td>covering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.</td>
<td>marry</td>
<td>marrying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37.</td>
<td>defile</td>
<td>defiling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38.</td>
<td>stretch</td>
<td>stretching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39.</td>
<td>sweat</td>
<td>sweating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40.</td>
<td>sketch</td>
<td>sketching</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**AUXILIARY OR MODAL OR LINKING OR HELPING VERBS**

These are doing words that are positioned or used before the main verbs to form certain tenses.

**Examples:**
1. is
2. are
3. am
4. be
ADVERBS

An adverb is a word that add more information about a place, time, manner, cause or degree to a verb, an adjective, a phrase or another adverb.

KINDS OF ADVERBS;

a) Adverbs of manner;
   - Adverbs of manner tell us how the action of a verb happened.
Examples:
1. The woman dressed **badly**.
2. The basket was **nicely** woven.
3. All the guests were **smartly** dressed.
4. The teacher **hurriedly** walked out of the class.
5. The bridal gown was **beautifully** made.

b) **Adverbs of time**;
- Adverbs of time tell us **when** the action of the verb happened.

Examples:
1. When did you finish the exercise?
   I finished the exercise at 3:00 p.m.
2. When does your parent punish you for wrong deeds?
   My parent occasionally punishes me for wrong deeds.
3. When do you eat beef at home?
   We seldom eat beef at home.
4. When will Nabiwata bring my books?
   Nabiwata will bring my books tomorrow.
5. When did the bus leave Gulu?
   The bus left Gulu yesterday.

c) **Adverbs of place**
- Adverbs of place tell us where the action of the verb took place.
- These adverbs are mainly places.

Example:
1. Where did he die from?
   He died from **Mulago Hospital**.

d) **Adverbs of frequency**
- Adverbs of frequency tell us **how often** an action happens.

Example:
1. How often do you go to school?
I **always** go to school.

e) **Adverbs of duration**
- Adverbs of duration tell us **how long** an action lasts.

**Example:**
1. For how long did the presidential campaigns run?
   - The presidential campaigns ran for a **month**.

f) **Adverbs of degree.**
- Adverbs of degree tell us to what extent an action of a verb happens.

**Example:**
1. How did the candidates perform?
   - The candidates performed very well.

**FORMATION OF ADVERBS;**
- Most regular adverbs are formed from adjectives.

a) **Formation of adverbs by adding ‘ly’**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>ADVERB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. bad</td>
<td>badly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. smart</td>
<td>smartly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. nice</td>
<td>nicely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. safe</td>
<td>safely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. careful</td>
<td>carefully</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b) **Formation of adverbs by dropping “e” and adding “ly”**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>ADVERB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. true</td>
<td>truly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. able</td>
<td>ably</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. gentle</td>
<td>gently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. simple</td>
<td>simply</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. humble</td>
<td>humbly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. possible</td>
<td>possibly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
c) Formation of adverbs by dropping “y” and adding “ily”.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>ADVERB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>easy</td>
<td>easily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happy</td>
<td>happily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heavy</td>
<td>heavily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angry</td>
<td>angrily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hungry</td>
<td>hungrily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shabby</td>
<td>shabbily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>merry</td>
<td>merrily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noisy</td>
<td>noisily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steady</td>
<td>steadily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d) Formation of adverbs from adjectives that end with the suffix “ful” and double “l” plus “y”.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>ADVERB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>beautiful</td>
<td>beautifully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>careful</td>
<td>carefully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grateful</td>
<td>gratefully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>harmful</td>
<td>harmfully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>merciful</td>
<td>mercifully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>successful</td>
<td>successfully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>useful</td>
<td>usefully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheerful</td>
<td>cheerfully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shameful</td>
<td>shamefully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thankful</td>
<td>thankfully</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

e) Formation of adverbs from adjectives that end with “al” and also double “l” and take “y”.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>ADVERB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>equal</td>
<td>equally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mental</td>
<td>mentally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>personal</td>
<td>personally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accidental</td>
<td>accidentally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brutal</td>
<td>brutally</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
f) Some irregular adverbs have no order of formation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>ADVERB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. good</td>
<td>well/better/worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. better</td>
<td>better/best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. hard</td>
<td>hard/hardly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. bad</td>
<td>badly/worse/worst</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

g) Some adjectives don't change as adverbs;

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>ADVERB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. fast</td>
<td>fast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. early</td>
<td>early</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. late</td>
<td>late/lately</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. hard</td>
<td>hard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. next</td>
<td>next</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. better</td>
<td>better</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. last</td>
<td>last</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note:
hurry – hurriedly

**OPPOSITES OF ADVERBS;**
Give the opposites of the following words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>OPPOSITE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>carefully</td>
<td>carelessly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comfortably</td>
<td>uncomfortably</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ever</td>
<td>never</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>early</td>
<td>late</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fast</td>
<td>slowly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quickly</td>
<td>slowly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happily</td>
<td>unhappily/sadly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kindly</td>
<td>unkindly/cruelly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noisily</td>
<td>quietly/calmly/secretly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>often</td>
<td>rarely/seldom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>politely</td>
<td>impolitely/rudely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proudly</td>
<td>humbly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>safely</td>
<td>unsafely/dangerously</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>truly</td>
<td>untruly/falsely</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
15. well  badly
16. lazily  industriously
17. heavily  lightly
18. hungrily  satisfactorily
19. mercifully  mercilessly
20. shabbily  smartly

DECREES OF COMPARISONS OF ADVERBS;

a) Adverbs, like adjectives, are compared in three degrees i.e the simple degree, the comparative degree and the superlative degree.

REGULAR COMPARISONS OF ADVERBS;

1. Regular comparisons of adverbs take “r”, “er” or “ier” in the comparative degree and take “st”, “est” or “iest” in the superlative degree.

Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMPLE DEGREE</th>
<th>COMPARATIVE DEGREE</th>
<th>SUPERLATIVE DEGREE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. late</td>
<td>later</td>
<td>latest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. fast</td>
<td>faster</td>
<td>fastest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. hard</td>
<td>harder</td>
<td>hardest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. early</td>
<td>earlier</td>
<td>earliest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Regular comparisons of adverbs that have “more” than two syllables take more or “less” in the comparative degree and “most or “least” in the superlative degree.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMPLE DEGREE</th>
<th>COMPARATIVE DEGREE</th>
<th>SUPERLATIVE DEGREE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. smartly</td>
<td>more smartly</td>
<td>most smartly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. nicely</td>
<td>more nicely</td>
<td>most nicely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. carefully</td>
<td>more carefully</td>
<td>most carefully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. gently</td>
<td>more gently</td>
<td>most gently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. happily</td>
<td>more happily</td>
<td>most happily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IRREGULAR COMPARISONS OF ADVERBS;
Irregular comparisons of adverbs are comparisons that have no order of change in their comparative and superlative degrees.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMPLE DEGREE</th>
<th>COMPARATIVE DEGREE</th>
<th>SUPERLATIVE DEGREE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. badly</td>
<td>worse</td>
<td>worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. well</td>
<td>better</td>
<td>best</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sentence practice.**

**TENSES;**

A tense is a time action supported by a verb.

**Kinds of tenses:**

There are three kinds of tenses;

1. The present tense
2. The past tense
3. The future tense

**THE PRESENT TENSE;**

- The present tense is used to express what happens in the present.
- The present tense is divided into four forms.
  a) The present simple tense
  b) The present continuous tense
  c) The present perfect tense
  d) The present perfect continuous tense

**THE PAST TENSE;**

- The past tense is used to express / describe past events.
- The past tense is also divided into four forms
  a) The past simple tense
  b) The past continuous tense
  c) The past perfect tense
  d) The past perfect continuous tense
THE FUTURE TENSE;
- The future tense is used to express actions or events that will happen sometime to come ahead (future).
- The future tense is also divided into four forms.
a) The future simple tense.
b) The future continuous tense
c) The future perfect tense
d) The future perfect continuous tense

THE PRESENT SIMPLE TENSE;
a) The present simple tense is used to express repeated or habitual actions and general truths.

Sentence practice.
1. John runs everyday.
2. Pupils pay school fees every term.
3. I bathe daily.
4. We believe in one God.
5. River Nile flows northwards.
b) The main verb takes “s” or “es” when the sentence has a singular subject and the main verb doesn’t take “es” when the sentence has a plural subject.

Note carefully.
- The main verb does not take “s” when the sentence has the first person singular (I) and the second person singular (you).
c) Main verbs ending with “o” and hissing sounds take “es” in the present simple tense.
d) Main verbs ending with “y” but have a consonant before “y” drop “y” and take “ies” in the present simple tense.
e) Below are some of the main adverbs in the present simple tense.
- always
- regularly
- daily (everyday)
- often
- sometimes
- usually

Sentence practice.

THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE

a) The present continuous tense is used to express what is happening at the present moment in front of the speaker.
b) We use “is”, “are”, “am” plus “ing” from the main verb which is then referred to as a gerund.
c) Singular subjects take “is” as “a” linking or helping verb in the sentence.

Examples:
1. Sarah is climbing a tree.
2. He is fighting.
d) Plural subjects take “are” as a linking or helping verb in the sentences.

Examples:
1. We are running to school.
2. Leah and Anita are sitting together.
e) The first person singular (I) takes “am” as a linking or helping verb in the sentence.

Example:
1. I am going to school now.

f) Verbs which have a (CVC) consonant vowel Consonant order of the last three letters, double the last consonant and then take “ing” in the present continuous tense.

Examples:
1. sit  sitting
2. get  getting
3. run  running
4. clap  clapping
5. mop  mopping

g) Main verbs ending with “e” lose it and take “ing” in the gerund (verb) form.

Examples:

| 1. leave | leaving |
| 2. come  | coming  |
| 3. bake  | baking  |
| 4. choose| choosing|
| 5. dance | dancing |

h) Main verbs ending with “ie” lose them and take “ying” in the present continuous tense.

Examples:

| 1. die  | dying |
| 2. tie  | tying |
| 3. lie  | lying |

i) Main verbs whose actions cannot be controlled because they take place in our mind do not “is”, “are” or “am”.

1. see
2. smell
3. hear
4. feel
5. taste
6. agree
7. believe
8. forgive
9. hate
10. forget
11. think
12. own
13. listen
14. refuse
15. wish
16. decide
17. have
18. care
19. like
20. notice
21. love
22. remember
23. posses
24. want
25. understand
26. certain
27. consist
28. know
29. disagree
30. matter etc
- Therefore, when using the above verbs in the present continuous tense with;
  a) I
  b) He
  c) She
  d) We
  e) They
  f) It
- We add “s” or “es” to them.

**Examples:**

**Key:**

1a) Wrong statement
  b) I see him coming out of the office.

2a) I am smelling fish.
  b) I smell fish.

3a) I am hearing a baby crying.
b) I hear a baby crying.

4a) We are feeling cold.

b) We feel cold.

5a) He is tasting the bitterness of the tablet.

b) He tastes the bitterness of the tablet.

6a) She is agreeing with them.

b) She agrees with them.

7a) Most learners are believing in their teachers.

b) Most learners believe in their teachers.

8a) They are forgiving you for what you have done.

b) They forgive you for what you have done.

9a) The teacher is hating marking untidy work.

b) The teacher hates marking untidy work.

10a) Jane is forgetting that she had paid for the book.

b) Jane forgets that she had paid for the book.

**Sentence practice.**

---

**THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE**

a) The present perfect tense is used to express actions or events which have just happened or taken place.

b) We use “has” for singular subjects and “have” for plural subjects.

**Examples.**

1. Namata has *gone* to school.
2. The boys have *gone* to the theatre.
3. She has *taken* my mango.
4. He has just *broken* the glass.
5. They have *gone* for prayers.
c) The first person singular (I) and the second person singular and the third person (you) take “have”.

**Examples:**
1. I have just done the teacher’s work.
2. I have chosen the sweetest mango from the basket.
3. You have taken her shoe.
4. You have given me your money.
5. You have written good poems.

d) The main verb in the present perfect tense in a sentence is always in the perfect or participle form.

e) Below can be some of the adverbs of time used in the present perfect tense.
1. just
2. ever
3. never
4. since
5. for
6. already
7. yet etc

**Sentence practice.**

**THE PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE**

a) The present perfect continuous tense is used to express actions that began and are still going on at the present moment.

We use “has” for singular subjects and “have” for plural subjects and “been” plus “------ing” on the main verbs in the present continuous tense.

**Examples:**
1. The boy has been playing football.
2. They have been dancing.
c) The first person singular (I) and the second person singular and third person plural (you) take “have” and “been” plus ----ing on the main verb in the present perfect continuous tense.

**Example:**
1. I have been writing my work.
2. You have been teaching since break time.

d) We can use “for” and “since” as adverbs of time in the present perfect continuous tense.

**Example:**
1. It has been raining since morning.
2. We have been mopping the house for four hours.

e) We use “for” when we are given the length or period or duration of time.

**Examples:**
1. for four hours
2. for ten days
3. for a week
4. for a fortnight
5. for three months etc

f) We use “since” when we are given a particular point of time when the action started taking place.

**Examples:**
1. since morning
2. since yesterday
3. since last week
4. since 8:00 a.m
5. since last month etc

**Sentence practice**

**THE PAST SIMPLE TENSE:**
a) The past simple tense is the main narrative tense which we normally use in telling stories or making reports about what happened in the past.
b) The main verb in the past simple tense stands alone whether the subject of the sentence is singular or plural.
c) Most regular verbs in the past simple tense take “d”, “end” or “t”.
d) Some main verbs which have a Consonant Vowel Consonant (CVC) order if the last three letters double the last consonant and then take “ed” in the past simple tense.

**Examples:**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>mop</td>
<td>mopped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>clap</td>
<td>clapped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>fit</td>
<td>fitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>step</td>
<td>stepped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>rub</td>
<td>rubbed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

e) Some main verbs do **not** change in the past simple tense.

**Examples:**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

f) Some main verbs that are irregular change any how in the past simple tense.

**Examples:**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>ran</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>fight</td>
<td>fought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
g) Below are some of the adverbs of time in the past simple tense.
   1. yesterday
   2. last
   3. previous
   4. ago
   5. recently
   6. last week
   7. last month
   8. last year etc

**Sentence practices**

**THE PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE**

a) The past continuous tense is used to express an action that was going on in the past with another interfering in front of the speaker.

b) We use the past continuous tense to show that two actions or events were taking place at the same time.

c) We can also use the past continuous tense to show that an activity was continuous over a certain period of time.

d) We use “was” for singular subjects and “were” for plural subjects plus a gerund verb.

**Examples:**

1. The boy was eating food.
2. They were running to school.
3. We can also use “when”, “while” and “as” in the past continuous tense.

**Examples:**

1. I saw a snake when I was coming to school.
2. While I was eating food, the boys were playing football.
3. As the teacher was teaching, the children were dancing.

**Sentence practice.**
THE PAST PERFECT TENSE.

a) The past perfect tense is used to express or show an action/even that took place in the past and was complete before a certain fixed time.

Example:
1. We had eaten our food by the time it began raining.

b) The past perfect tense is also used to show that one action took place before or after another but in the past.

Example:
2. We arrived at the field at 5:00p.m.
   The match started at 4:00p.m.

Begin: By the time --------
- By the time we arrived at the field, the match had already started.
- By the time the match started, we had not yet arrived at the field.

Use: ------------- by the time -------------
- The match had already started by the time we arrived at the field.
- We had not yet arrived at the field by the time the match started.

c) Had is the only helping verb followed by the perfect or participle form of the main verb in the past perfect tense.

Example:
3. Mercy had written the teacher’s work.

d) We can also use the past perfect tense to show that two actions/event took place in the past but one before or after the other.

Example:
The team reached the airport at 6:00p.m. The plane left at 5:30p.m.

Begin: Before --------
- Before the team reached the airport, the plane had already left.

Use: --------- before ---------
- The plane had already left before the team reached the airport.

Before: After ----------

After the plane had left, the team reached the airport.

Use; ----------- after ----------

The team reached the airport after the plane had left.

e) The past perfect tense is also used in the indirect or reported speech when the present perfect and the past simple tenses have been used in the direct speech.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Direct speech</th>
<th>Indirect speech</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present perfect speech</td>
<td>Past perfect tense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past simple tense</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples:**

5. The teacher said, “I have spoken to her about her dressing.”
   - The teacher said that he had spoken to her about her dressing.

6. “I wrote a letter to my mother,” said the boy.
   - The boy said that he had written a letter to his mother.

f) The past perfect tense can also be used with the verbs, remember and “forget”.

**Examples:**

7. I remembered that I had not completed the teacher’s work.

8. Peter forgot what his brother had told him.

**Examples:**

7. I remembered that I had not completed the teacher’s work.

8. Peter forgot what his brother had told him.

**Examples:**

7. I remembered that I had not completed the teacher’s work.

8. Peter forgot what his brother had told him.

**Examples:**

7. I remembered that I had not completed the teacher’s work.

8. Peter forgot what his brother had told him.

**Examples:**

7. I remembered that I had not completed the teacher’s work.

8. Peter forgot what his brother had told him.

**Examples:**

7. I remembered that I had not completed the teacher’s work.

8. Peter forgot what his brother had told him.

**Examples:**

7. I remembered that I had not completed the teacher’s work.

8. Peter forgot what his brother had told him.

**Examples:**

7. I remembered that I had not completed the teacher’s work.

8. Peter forgot what his brother had told him.

**Examples:**

7. I remembered that I had not completed the teacher’s work.

8. Peter forgot what his brother had told him.

**Examples:**

7. I remembered that I had not completed the teacher’s work.

8. Peter forgot what his brother had told him.

**Examples:**

7. I remembered that I had not completed the teacher’s work.

8. Peter forgot what his brother had told him.

**Examples:**

7. I remembered that I had not completed the teacher’s work.

8. Peter forgot what his brother had told him.
Examples:

9. Esther did her work first. Then she went for lunch.

Use ------- until -------
- Esther did not go for lunch until she had done her work.

Use ------- till -------
- Esther didn't go for lunch till she had done her work.

h) The past perfect tense can also be used with the third conditional clauses / IF 3 to show an action/event which was supposed to happen but did not happen. The third conditional clauses / IF 3 sentences can also begin with “Had” whereby in such a case, the word “if” is dropped.

Examples:

1. The lion did not see me. The lion did not eat me.

a) Begin: If -------
If the lion had seen me, if would have eaten me.

b) Use; ----------- if --------
The lion would have eaten me if it had seen me.

c) Begin: Had -----------
Had the lion seen me, it would have eaten me.

Sentence practice.

THE PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE;

a) The past perfect continuous tense is used to express an action/event which started before another some time in the past and it was still going on when the second action even took place.

b) We use had + been and a gerund verb in the past perfect continuous tense.

c) We use had + been and a gerund verb whether with a singular or plural subject.

Example:
1. Kamese had been eating my groundnuts.

**Sentence practice.**

**THE FUTURE TENSE:**
The future tense is used to express an action event that will happen sometime to come.

**FORMS OF THE FUTURE TENSE:**
1. The future simple tense.
   a) The future simple (present)
   b) The future simple (past)
2. The future continuous tense.
   a) The future continuous (present)
   b) The future continuous (past)
3. The future perfect tense
   a) The future perfect (present)
   b) The future perfect (past)
4. The future perfect continuous tense.
   a) The future perfect continuous (present)
   b) The future perfect continuous (past)
5. The coloured future tense
6. The future tense with “going to”

**THE FUTURE SIMPLE TENSE PRESENT**
   a) This is the tense where we use “will” and “shall”
   b) We use “will” and “shall” with pronouns according to persons.
   c) We have the 1\textsuperscript{st}, 2\textsuperscript{nd} and the 3\textsuperscript{rd} persons.
   d) The 1\textsuperscript{st} person talks to the 2\textsuperscript{nd} person, the 2\textsuperscript{nd} person listens and the 3\textsuperscript{rd} person is the one being talked about.
   e) These persons are both singular and plural.
### Illustration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st person</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>We</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd person</td>
<td>You</td>
<td>You</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd person</td>
<td>He</td>
<td>They</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>She</td>
<td>They</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It</td>
<td>They</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>One</td>
<td>They</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example:

1. I am calling you to talk about him. (he)

f) The 1st person singular (I) and plural (We) take “shall”.

### Examples:

1. I shall go to school tomorrow.
2. We shall play together tomorrow.

### Example:

1. I shall go to school tomorrow.
2. We shall play together tomorrow.

f) The 1st person singular (I) and plural (We) take “shall”.

### Examples:

1. I shall go to school tomorrow.
2. We shall play together tomorrow.

f) The 1st person singular (I) and plural (We) take “shall”.

### Summary:

i) I shall
We

ii) He
She
It
One
Nelson Lamulah and Akram
The boy
The girls

h) The following adverbs of time can be used in the future simple tense.
1. tomorrow
2. next week
3. next month
4. next year
5. the next day
6. the following day

Sentence practice

VOICES:

THE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICES:

THE ACTIVE VOICE.
This is a voice which clearly indicates the subject of the sentence performing an action of a verb onto an object.

Example:
Richard plays football everyday.

THE PASSIVE VOICE:
This is a voice which shows or emphasizes the object onto which an action of a verb is performed by the subject or doer.

Example:
Football is played by Richard everyday.
We use the preposition “by” incase we are to mention the doer or subject.

CHANGING SENTENCES FROM THE ACTIVE TO THE PASSIVE VOICE:

a) The present simple tense;
We use;
Object + is + the perfect or participle verb + subject.
Object + am + the perfect or participle verb + subject.
Object + are + the perfect or participle verb + subject.

Examples:
1. The housemaid beats the child everyday.
   - The child is beaten by the housemaid everyday.
2. My father drives me to school everyday.
   - I am driven to school by my father everyday.
3. My mother mends my shorts everyday.
   - My shorts are mended by my mother everyday.

Lesson activity:

b) The present continuous tense;
We use;
Object + is + being + the perfect or participle verb + subject.
Object + am + being + the perfect or participle verb + subject.
Object + are + being + the perfect or participle verb + subject.

Examples:
1. The housemaid is beating the child.
   - The child is being beaten by the housemaid.
2. My father is taking me to China.
   - I am being taken to China by my father.
3. My mother is mending my shorts.
- My shorts are being mended by my mother.

**Lesson activity:**

c) **The present perfect tense:**

We use:

Object + has + been + the perfect or participle verb + subject.
Object + have + been + the perfect or participle verb + subject.

**Examples:**

1. The housemaid has beaten the child.
   - The child has been beaten by the housemaid.
2. The hens have laid the eggs in the basket.
   - The eggs have been laid by the hens in the basket.

**Lesson activity:**

d) **The present perfect continuous tense:**

We use:

Object + has + been + being + the perfect or participle verb + subject.
Object + have + been + being + the perfect or participle verb + subject.

**Examples:**

1. The housemaid has been beating the child.
   - The child has been being beaten by the housemaid.
2. The ducks have been laying the eggs in the basket.
   - The eggs have been being laid by the ducks in the basket.

**Lesson activity:**

e) **The past simple tense:**

We use:

Object + was + the perfect or participle verb + subject.
Object + were + the perfect or participle verb + subject.

**Examples:**

1. The dog chased the goat yesterday.
   - The goat was chased by the dog yesterday.
2. My aunt mended my shorts yesterday.
   - My shorts were mended by my aunt yesterday.

**Lesson activity:**

f) The past continuous tense;

We use;

Object + was + being + the perfect or participle verb + subject.
Object + were + being + the perfect or participle verb + subject.

**Examples:**

1. The dog was chasing the goat yesterday.
   - The goat was being chased by the dog yesterday.
2. My aunt was mending my shorts yesterday.
   - My shorts were being mended by my aunt yesterday.

**Lesson activity:**

g) The past perfect tense;

We use;

Object + had + been + the perfect or participle verb + subject.

**Example:**

1. The dog had chased the goat.
   - The goat had been chased by the dog.

**Lesson activity:**

h) The past perfect continuous tense;
We use:
Object + had + been + being + the perfect or participle verb + subject.

**Example:**
1. My aunt had been mending my shorts.
- My shorts had been being mended by my aunt.

**Lesson activity:**

i) **The future simple tense:**
We use:
Object + will + be + the perfect or participle verb + subject.
Object + shall + be + the perfect or participle verb + subject.

**Examples:**
1. Ritah will break that glass.
- That glass will be broken by Ritah.
2. The teacher will beat me.
- I shall be beaten by the teacher.

**Lesson activity:**

j) **The future continuous tense:**
We use:
Object + will + be + being + the perfect or participle verb + subject.
Object + shall + be + being + the perfect or participle verb + subject.

**Examples:**
1. Ritah will be breaking that glass.
- That glass will be being broken by Ritah.
2. The teacher will be beating me.
- I shall be being beaten by the teacher.

**Lesson activity:**
k) **The future perfect tense;**

We use:

Object + will + have + been + the perfect or participle verb + subject.
Object + shall + have + been + the perfect or participle verb + subject.

**Examples:**

1. Ritah will have broken that glass.
   - That glass will have been broken by Ritah.
2. The teacher will have beaten me.
   - I shall have been beaten by the teacher.

**Lesson activity:**

l) **The future perfect continuous tense;**

We use:

Object + will + have + been + being + the perfect or participle verb + subject.
Object + shall + have + been + being + the perfect or participle verb + subject.

**Examples:**

1. Ritah will have been breaking that glass.
   - That glass will have been being broken by Ritah.
2. The teacher will have been beating me.
   - I shall have been being beaten by the teacher.

**Lesson activity:**

**THE DIRECT AND INDIRECT / REPORTED SPEECH**

**THE DIRECT SPEECH:**

- The direct speech are the actual or real or original words of a speaker.
- The direct speech can also be your own report using your own words.
- The direct speech is made of two parts:-
  a) The speech tag or reporting part.
  b) The actual or real or original words used.
- These actual or real or original words must be between quotation marks or both open and close inverted commas.
- These quotation marks or inverted commas can be either single or double (‘ ’ or “ ”).
- The direct speech is used when reporting matters in court, newspapers, books and many other writings of quotations.

**REQUIREMENTS IN THE CORRECT SENTENCES:**

1. A comma is used to separate the actual words of a speaker from the reporting part e.g. ;-
   - said
   - asked
   - told
   - requested
   - ordered
   - commanded
   - demanded etc

2. The quotation marks only enclose the actual speech or words but not the reporting part or speech tag.

  **Example:**
  a) David said, “Go and tell Mary to come here.”

3. The closing quotation marks are clearly placed away from the nearest punctuation mark in a sentence.

  **Example:**
  b) “What a beautiful girl she is! He wondered.

**POSITIONS OF THE SPEECH TAG IN CORRECT DIRECT SPEECH SENTENCES**

- The speech tag or the reporting part in a correct direct speech sentence, has three positions;
  a) At the beginning of a sentence.

**Example:**
1. James said, “Jamirah is a bad girl.”
b) At the end of a sentence.
2. “Jamirah is a bad girl.” James said.
c) In the middle of a sentence.

**Example:**
“Jamirah,” said James, “is a bad girl”.

**NB:**
- The positions of the speech tag help us when we are asked to punctuate direct speech tag sentences correctly.

**Sentence practice:**

**THE INDIRECT OR REPORTED SPEECH**
- This is when someone else reports for you but using your own words.
- The indirect or reported speech is made up of three parts.
  a) The speech tag or reporting part.
  b) The conjunction (joining word or connector)
  c) The said words in the past form.

**Example:**
1. Mary said that Paul was a clever boy.

**CHANGES IN TIME AND PERSONS FROM THE DIRECT TO THE INDIRECT OR REPORTED SPEECH.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIRECT SPEECH</th>
<th>INDIRECT OR REPORTED SPEECH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. I</td>
<td>he/she</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. we</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. my</td>
<td>his/her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. me</td>
<td>His/her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. mine</td>
<td>his/hers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. our</td>
<td>their</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>ours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>you (singular)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>you (plural)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>is/am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>will</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>shall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>can</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>have to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>has to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>must</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>was to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>were to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>may</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>bring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>here</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>ago</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>these</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>last</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>today</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>tomorrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>yesterday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>present simple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>present continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>present perfect continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>past simple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>past continuous</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
REPORTING STATEMENTS IN THE PRESENT SIMPLE TENSE
- The present simple tense in the direct speech changes to the past simple tense in the indirect or reported speech.

Sentence practice:

REPORTING STATEMENTS IN THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE
- The present continuous tense in the direct speech changes to the past continuous tense in the indirect or reported speech.

Sentence practice:

REPORTING STATEMENTS IN THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE
- The present perfect tense in the direct speech changes to the past perfect tense in the indirect or reported speech.

Sentence practice:

REPORTING STATEMENTS IN THE PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE
- The present perfect continuous tense in the direct speech changes to the past tense in the indirect or reported speech.

Sentence practice:

REPORTING STATEMENTS IN THE PAST SIMPLE TENSE
- The past simple tense in the direct speech changes to the past perfect tense in the indirect or reported speech.

Sentence practice.

REPORTING STATEMENTS IN THE PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE
- The past continuous tense in the direct speech changes to the past perfect continuous tense in the indirect or reported speech. 

**Sentence practice.**

**REPORTING STATEMENTS IN THE PAST PERFECT TENSE**
- The past perfect tense in the direct speech remains the same in the indirect or reported speech. 

**Sentence practice.**

**REPORTING STATEMENTS IN THE PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE**
- The past perfect continuous tense in the direct speech remains the same in the indirect or reported speech. 

**Sentence practice.**

**REPORTING STATEMENTS IN THE FUTURE SIMPLE TENSE (PRESENT)**
- The future simple tense (present) in the direct speech changes to the future simple tense (past) in the indirect or reported speech. 

**Sentence practice.**

**REPORTING STATEMENTS IN THE FUTURE CONTINUOUS TENSE (PRESENT)**
- The future continuous tense (present) in the direct speech changes to the future continuous tense (past) in the indirect or reported speech. 

**Sentence practice.**

**REPORTING STATEMENTS IN THE FUTURE PERFECT TENSE (PRESENT)**
- The future perfect tense (present) in the direct speech becomes the future perfect tense (past) in the indirect or reported speech. 

**Sentence practice.**

**REPORTING STATEMENTS IN THE FUTURE CONTINUOUS TENSE (PRESENT)**
- The future perfect continuous tense (present) in the direct speech changes to the future perfect continuous tense (past) in the indirect or reported speech. 

**Sentence practice.**

**REPORTING QUESTIONING STATEMENTS:**
- When reporting questions, we remove the questioning idea and even the conjunctions or joining words change accordingly.
Questions are reported in two ways/categories.
a) Questions which short with helping verbs such as; is, am, are, was, were, do, did does, has, have, had, will, shall, can, would, should, could, may, might, must etc have “whether” or “if” as their conjunctions.
**Sentence practice.**

b) Questions which start with questions words like; what, why, where, when, who, whom, which, whose, how, the conjunction or joining word will be that very questioning word.
**Sentence practice.**

**REPORTING COMMANDS / ORDERS**
Compounds are classified into two groups;

a) Positive commands

b) Negative commands
- When reporting commands, the conjunction or joining word is preposition “to”.
- When reporting commands, the word “said” in the direct speech changes to the indirect or reported speech.
Other conjunctions when reported commands can be ordered commanded etc.
**Sentence practice.**

**REPORTING NEGATIVE COMMANDS**
- When reporting negative commands, the words “do not” or “don’t” in the direct speech change to “not” in the indirect or reported speech.
**Sentence practice.**

**LANGUAGE STRUCTURAL PATTERNS:**
**Rewrite and punctuate the following sentences correctly.**
1. helen has gone to mombasa
2. when i was going to town i met a mad woman
3. what are the main parts of an informal letter
4. what a bright girl my sister is
5. my father said i am going for a picnic
6. all the ladies bags were nice looking
7. josephs pen has been stolen
8. his brother in law is a pilot
9. how greedy a hyena is
10. why did he slap you

Rewrite the following sentences into the plural form.

11. I am standing for him so that his land is not cheated by her.
12. He was caught stealing with him yesterday.
13. She is playing it from the football field.
14. It has thrown itself in the ditch.
15. My home was destroyed and he laughed at me.

Rewrite the following sentences into the singular form.

16. Their oxen plough our gardens all the time.
17. Negroes are carrying cargoes and radios.
18. These geese are going to be eaten by those mice.
19. Deer are fast animals.
20. Their pairs of pants have fungi and they are found in aquaria.

Rewrite the sentences using ‘self’ or ‘selves’.

21. Mark and Moses have done the work without anybody helping them.
22. My aunt bought the mutton from the butcher’s.
23. The car climbed the wall without anybody’s help.
24. One was supposed to carry out an experiment independent of others.
25. We are going to carry the luggage even if you don’t come and help us.

Rewrite as instructed in brackets.

26. She took her problems to her parents by herself. (Begin: One --------)
27. He will eat this bone by himself today. (Begin: It ---------)
28. I am lucky to take my book myself for marking to the English teacher. (Begin: You ----)
29. Let you try to start your car yourself.
(Begin: Let Joan, Moses, Jamirah and I -------)
30. She worked very hard with her determination to pass her exams by herself.
   (Begin: You ----------)
31. We shall revise our books during the holidays. (Use; ---------- going to -----)
32. Nambi will travel to Kigali next month. (Use; ----- going to -------)
33. I shall enjoy my brother’s birthday party. (Use; ----- going to------- )
34. John is the boy. He won the post of a head boy. (Join using; ---- who ----)
35. That is the house. It was burnt to ashes. (Use; ------ which ----------)
36. Barbra is the girl. Her posters were torn. (Use; -------- whose --------)
37. This is the place. The elections were held here. (Use; ---- where ------)
38. The girl is pregnant. We thought she could get a first grade.
   (Use; -- whom --)
39. The painter painted the house last year. It is already spoilt.
   (Use; ---- that ---)
40. The boy was taken to hospital. His arm was broken. (Use;------ whose ------)
41. The boy informed the police. The boy saw the thief. (Use;------ who ------)
42. The rabbit was later trapped. The rabbit had run very fast.
   (Use; --------- which --------)
43. The plan was to travel only at night. The passengers agreed to it.
   a) (Use; ------- to which ----------)
   b) (Use; ------------ which -------- to --------)
44. The story was not very interesting. The pupils laughed heartily at it.
   a) (Use; ------------ at which -----------)
   b) (Use; --------- which ------- at ---------)
45. The child was about seven years old. The policemen were moving with her.
   a) (Use; --------- with whom --------)
   b) (Use; ---------------- whom ---------- with --------)
46. The man had a broken arm. My aunt was looking at him.
47. The rich man said that the meat was not good. The butcher took it to him.
   a) (Use; ------------- to whom ----------)
   b) (Use; --------- whom ------- to ---------)

48. The Congolese gave the Rwandan some water to drink. The Rwandan was begging from him.
   a) (Use; -------------- from whom ----------)
   b) (Use; ------------- whom --------- from --------)

49. The thief was arrested by the passer-by. The defense forces were looking for him.
   a) (Use; ---------------- for whom ----------)
   b) (Use; -------------- whom ------------- for -------)

50. The two girls didn't like Tom. Tom used to sit between them.
   a) (Use; -------------- between whom -------)
   b) (Use; -------------- whom ----------between --------)

51. The coach will improve the team's performance. We trust in him.
   a) (Use; -------------- in whom ----------)
   b) (Use; -------------- whom ------------ in ------)

52. The author has died. Many books had been written by him.
   a) (Use; -------------- by whom ----------)
   b) (Use; -------------- whom ------------ by ------)

53. The woman went to Newzealand. Many interesting songs were written about her.
   a) (Use; -------------- about ------ whom ---------)
   b) (Use; -------------- whom -------- about -------)

54. The scouts' camp had clear water. We were camping in it.
   a) (Use; ------------ in which --------)
55. The manager is very strict. All the workers operate under him.
   a) (Use; _______ under whom _________)
   b) (Use; _______ whom _______ under _________)

56. The army was undisciplined. The citizens complained about it.
   a) (Use; --------- about which ---------)
   b) (Use; --------- which ------- about --------)

57. The goat was old and tough. My uncle was charged ten thousand shillings for it.
   a) (Use; _______ for which _________)
   b) (Use; _______ which _________ for _________)

58. The disease was a scourge. The minister died of it.
   a) (Use; _______ of which _________)
   b) (Use; _______ which _______ of _________)

59. The town sent out spies to pursue Josephine. Josephine ran away from it.
   a) (Use; _______ from which _________)
   b) (Use; _______ which _________ from _________)

60. The tree was full of red ants. The children hid under it.
   a) (Use; _______ under which _________)
   b) (Use; _______ which _________ under _________)

61. Here is the woman whose daughter’s wedding took place yesterday.
   (Rewrite as two separate sentences)

62. Juliet, whose husband is a doctor, is my teacher. (Rewrite as two separate sentences)

63. The woman from whom I bought the bridal gown was honest.
   (Rewrite as two separate sentences)

64. A teacher is important. A doctor is important. (Join using; ---- as ---- as ----)

65. Ronaldo and Messi are equally famous. (Use; _______ as ---- as _________)
66. Golola and Tyson are the same in strength. (Use; ---- as ------- as -----)
67. A cat isn’t fast. A hare is fast. (Use; ------------ not as -------- as -------)
68. My uncle is fat. My aunt isn’t fat. (Use; -------- not so ------- as --------)
69. The elders aren’t busy in books. The children are busy in books.
   (Use; ------- than --------)
70. Rose beats Peruth in size. (Use; ----------- not as --------- as -------)
71. A leopard beats a fox in roughness. (Use; -------- not so ------ as -------)
72. A radio beats a phone in importance. (Use; ------------ than -------)
73. Number one is as easy as number two. (Rewrite as two separate sentences)
74. The toilet is not as clean as the house. (Rewrite as two separate sentences)
75. The saucepans are not so delicate as the glasses.
   (Write as two separate sentences)
76. The cats are wiser than the dogs. (Rewrite as two separate sentences)
77. If you go high, it becomes cool. (Begin: The --------)
78. However much the teacher talked, I didn’t understand.
   (Begin: The ------, the ----)
79. Let your goods not be important, they will be cheap. (Begin: The --------)
80. She looks after children. They are young. They are brown. They are ignorant. They are slim. They are from Kenya. They are several.
   (Rewrite as one sentence without using; ‘who’ or ‘and’)
81. I don’t come late in the morning. (Use; -------- fond -------)
82. We want to pass to Secondary Schools. (Use; ------- interested -------)
83. The fishermen refused us to eat fish by poisoning it. (Use; ----deprived ---)
84. Peter is proud to wear good shoes. (Use; ------ proud of -------)
85. The disciplined boy gets good marks all the time. (Use; ---- used to -----)
86. Bwanika dodges lessons every Friday. (Use; ------------ accustomed -------)
87. Nakibuuka writes interesting compositions in English.
   (Use; ----- good at ----)
88. I wouldn’t like to be treated like an illegitimate child. (Use; --- object ----)
89. My mother thanked me because I passed P.L.E.
   (Use; -------- congratulated --)
90. The farmer can’t dig any more. (Use; ------ tired ------------)
91. The lady hopes she will receive free things. (Use; ---------- believes -----)
92. The unfortunate girl managed to carry out an abortion.
   (Use; ------- succeeded -------)
93. I was able to pass to P.7. (Use; ------------ capable ----------)
94. They thought that Jordan began the strike. (Use; ----- suspected -------)
95. It is bad to play cards during the holiday. (Begin: Playing -------------)
96. The boy saw that his master was away. He jumped over the fence.
   (Begin: Seeing -------------)
97. The stubborn boy was fooled by his friends. He lost his finger in the dog’s mouth. (Begin: Fooled -------------)
98. Daphine received her punishment and took off very fast.
   (Begin: Having -----)

**Rewrite as negative sentences.**
99. The baby cries everyday.
100. They are swimming in the river.
101. The tailor has sewn my clothes.
102. We have been learning computer.
103. He tore his shirt last Saturday.
104. They were choosing the red colours only.
105. The bird has flown into the nest.
106. The boys had been splitting firewood for the party.
107. I shall work at the farm tomorrow.
108. The girls will be preparing food for dinner.
109. He could leave it there.
110. You would be playing music as we dance.
111. We shall have understood tenses by the end of this topic.
112. Joan would have married Jacob.
113. She will have been dressing by 6:00 a.m.
114. They would have been answering questions by the end of the lesson.
115. The boy took some books from my desk.
116. There is somebody waiting for me outside.
117. There must be something in this house.
118. He should see someone for some help.
119. The treasurer is somewhere in the bank.
120. He has taken some juice. (Use: -------------- much --------)
121. There were some oranges wasted. (Use: ----------- many --------)

**Rewrite as interrogative or questioning sentences.**

122. The baby cries everyday.
123. They are swimming in the river.
124. The tailor has sewn my clothes.
125. We have been learning computer.
126. He tore his shirt last Saturday.
127. They were choosing the red colours only.
128. The bird has flown into the nest.
129. The boys had been splitting firewood for the party.
130. I shall work at the farm tomorrow.
131. The girls will be preparing food for dinner.
132. He could leave it there.
133. You would be playing music as we dance.
134. We shall have understood tenses by the end of this topic.
135. Joan would have married Jacob.
136. She will have been dressing by 6:00 a.m.
137. They would have been answering questions by the end of the lesson.
138. The boy took some books from my desk.
139. There is somebody waiting for me outside.
140. There must be something in this house.
141. He should see someone for some help.
142. The treasurer is somewhere in the bank.
143. He has taken some juice. (Use; -------------- much --------)
144. There were some oranges wasted. (Use; -------------- many -------)
145. My home is a long way from school. (Use; ----------- far ---------)
146. Kabale is a long way from here. (Use; ----------- far -------?)
147. It is not far from Mbarara to Lyantonde. (Use; --------- a long way ----)
148. Are you far from the cause of the disease? (Use; ---- a long way --------)
149. It takes a long time from Kitgum to Lira. (Use; ---- doesn’t --------)
150. The class took a long time to finish the exercise. (Use; --------- long ------)
151. It doesn’t take long to get you. (Use; ------- a long time --------)
152. Will the boy take long to finish the exercise? (Use; ------ a long time --------)
153. There is almost nobody who has bothered to apply for the job.
   a) (Use; ----------- hardly ---------)
   b) (Begin; Hardly----------------------)
154. There was no one at the post office.
   a) (Use; ----------- scarcely ---------)
   b) (Begin: Scarcely ---------------)
155. There isn’t any stamp on the envelope.
   a) (Use; ----------- rarely ---------)
   b) (Begin; Rarely---------------------)
156. There was almost no letter in the mailbox.
   a) (Use; ----------- barely ---------)
   b) (Begin; Barely---------------------)
157. There isn't any anyone at the reception.
   a) (Use; ----------- sparsely -----------)
   b) (Begin; Sparsely----------------------)
158. I haven't written any letter.
   a) (Use; ----------- shortly -----------)
   b) (Begin; Shortly ----------------------)
159. The invigilator told us to stand up immediately the bell rang.
   a) (Begin; No sooner had -----------)
   b) (Begin; The bell had no sooner ----------------------)
   c) (Begin: No sooner did -----------)
   d) (Begin; The bell did no sooner ----------------------)
160. As soon as the chief guest arrived, the choir members sang the school anthem.
   a) (Begin; Hardly had -----------)
   b) (Begin; The chief guest had hardly ----------------------)
   c) (Begin: Hardly did -----------)
   d) (Begin; The chief guest did hardly ----------------------)
161. Immediately the guest of honour arrived, they sang the National Anthem.
   a) (Begin; Scarcely had -----------)
   b) (Begin; The guest of honour had scarcely ----------------------)
   c) (Begin: Scarcely did -----------)
   d) (Begin; The guest of honour did scarcely ----------------------)
162. We had just shifted from the house. The thieves broke into the house.
   a) (Begin; Rarely had -----------)
   b) (Begin; We had rarely ----------------------)
   c) (Begin: Rarely did -----------)
   d) (Begin; We did rarely ----------------------)
163. The patient died as soon as we reached the hospital.
164. The patient died as soon as we reached the hospital.
   a) (Begin; We had barely ----------------------)
   b) (Begin; Barely did ----------------------)
   c) (Begin; We did barely ----------------------)

165. They ran away immediately they heard a gunshot.
   a) (Begin; Sparsely had ----------------------)
   b) (Begin; They had sparsely ----------------------)
   c) (Begin; Sparsely did ----------------------)
   d) (Begin; They did sparsely ----------------------)

166. As soon as the Reverend entered the church, the choir stood up.
   a) (Begin; Shortly had ----------------------)
   b) (Begin; The Reverend had shortly ----------------------)
   c) (Begin; Shortly did ----------------------)
   d) (Begin; The Reverend did shortly ----------------------)

167. Semakula is a good musician. Lutaaya is a good musician.
    (Use; --- and so ---)

168. The boy isn’t in class. The girl isn’t in class. (Use; ------ and neither ----)

169. Susan does not like camping. Catherine does not like camping.
    (Use; ------ and neither -------)

170. Agatha eats beef. Angella eats beef also. (Use; ---------- and so -----------)

171. The best man and the bridesmaid were smart. (Use; ------ and so ---------)

172. The bride wasn’t happy. The bridegroom wasn’t happy.
    (Use; ----- and neither ---------)

173. A DVD should be kept well. A CD should be kept well. (Use; ------- and so ----)

174. A radio shouldn’t have an aerial. A television shouldn’t have an aerial.
    (Use; ---- and neither ---------)
175. The television programmes were educative. The radio programmes were educative. (Use; ------------ and so --------)

176. The parents were not happy. The guests were not happy. (Use; ------ and neither ------)

177. The parents brought some gifts. The relatives brought some gifts. (Use; ----- and so ---------)

178. The flower girl didn't dance. The peg boy did not dance. (Use; ------- and neither --------)

179. The bride has children. The groom has children. (Use; -------- and so -------)

180. Babirye doesn’t have a cassette recorder. Nakato doesn’t have a cassette recorder. (Use; -------------- and neither -------)

181. The boys are very industrious. The girls are also very industrious. (Use; ---------------- and so -----------)

182. Snails are not fast. Tortoises are not fast. (Use; ------- and neither -------)

183. They pray everyday. I pray everyday. (Use; --- ----- and so ----------)

184. Libyans don’t eat pork. Egyptians don’t eat pork. (Use; --------- and neither --) 

185. Kipsiro is a good runner. I am a good runner. (Use; ------ and so -------)

186. I am not a catholic. He is not a catholic. (Use; ------ and neither -------)

187. They can plough that piece of land. We can plough that piece of land. (Use; --------- and so --------)

188. Melisa can't surf now. Martha can't surf now. (Use; -------and neither -------)

189. Both the head teacher and the staff will attend the wedding. (Use; ------- and so -------)

190. The matron shall wash the bed sheets. We shall wash the bed sheets. (Use; -------------- and so --------)

191. The guests shall not wait any more. I shall not wait any more. (Use; --------- and neither -------)
192. Judith may write to me next week. Jamirah may write to me next week.
   (Use; -------- and so --------)

193. Robert may not reply to my letter soon. Charles may not reply to my letter soon. (Use; ------- and neither --------)

194. Cars must have indicators. Motorcycles must have indicators.
   (Use; ------ and so --------)

195. Peter must not drive without a driving permit. Jane mustn’t drive without a driving permit. (Use; ------- and neither -------)

196. The supervisors have envelopes. The invigilators have envelopes.
   (Use; ------------ and so ---------)

197. Doctors haven’t any money. Teachers haven’t any money.
   (Use; -------- and neither --------)

198. Nakamatte had rung the bell. Makula had rung the bell.
   (Use; ---- and so ----)

199. My aunt and my uncle hadn’t visited the patient.
   (Use; ------- and neither ---)

200. The waiter could serve the customer. The waitress could serve the customers. (Use; ------- and so -----------)

201. Both the chef and the cook couldn’t listen to the manager.
   (Use; -------------- and neither ---------)

202. Tyson might celebrate his thirtieth birthday at Sheraton hotel. Williams might celebrate his thirtieth birthday at Sheraton hotel.
   (Use; --- and so -----)

203. The customers mightn’t have a rest in the lounge. The workers might not have a rest in the lounge. (Use; --------- and neither --------)

204. The lady would have fish and matooke. The gentleman would have fish and matooke. (Use; ------------ and so ---------)

205. Grace wouldn’t have failed the test. Gerald wouldn’t have failed the test.
(Use; ----------- and neither --------)

**Rewrite the sentences into the past.**

206. We must respect our teachers and parents because they love us.
207. He is to kneel here for an hour.
208. She will have to do the punishment.
209. The hosts are to clap hands for the visitors.
210. The naughty boy has to report here first as he comes back.
211. I am to be punctual for the examinations, otherwise, I shall miss them.
212. The voters have to line up in order to maintain discipline at the polling station.
213. We have to choose leaders of our choice in order to have lasting peace.
214. We may have to do without supper since there is no food.

**Rewrite the sentences as instructed without changing the original meaning.**

a) **Rewrite using; -------------- going to --------- .**

215. I shall enjoy my brother’s birthday party.
216. They will write to their pen-pals next week.

b) **Supply suitable question tags to the following statements.**

217. James is going to school, ________________________________?
218. Richard is not typing any work, ________________________________?
219. They are writing exams, ________________________________?
220. We aren’t going to church, ________________________________?
221. She sweeps the house everyday, ________________________________?
222. He does not eat meat, ________________________________?
223. It has eaten the porridge, ________________?
224. She hasn’t come today, _______________________ _________________?
225. We have done the work, _______________________ _________________?
226. Peter and Paul haven’t gone to Nigeria, _______________________ _________________?
227. Kakande was very clever, _______________________ _________________?
228. He wasn’t very lazy, _______________________ _________________?
229. They were breeding hens for meat, _______________________ _________________?
230. There weren’t any books at school, _______________________ _________________?
231. She had left for Masaka, _______________________ _________________?
232. We had not sought long before you came, _______________________ _________________?
233. They will do well at the farm, _______________________ _________________?
234. You won’t go home if you don’t complete the work, _______________________ _________________?
235. I shall help you, _______________________ _________________?
236. Juma and I shall not pay the fare, _______________________ _________________?
237. You like playing video games, _______________________ _________________?
238. I don’t eat pork, _______________________ _________________?
239. I am the first born in my family, _______________________ _________________?
240. Let’s go swimming now, _______________________ _________________?
241. Open those windows, _______________________ _________________?
242. She swept the bedroom, didn’t she? (Rewrite ending; ________, did she?)
243. They are not going to school, are they? (Rewrite ending ________, aren’t they?)
c) **Rewrite the following sentences from the active voice to the passive voice.**
244. The hens lay eggs in the basket everyday.
245. Our parents organize birthday parties.
246. The dogs are chasing the goats now.
247. The pupils are learning English now.
248. Prossy has dropped the pot down.
249. The bees have stung the robbers.
250. Daphine has been singing a song.
251. The young boys have been making kites.
252. The policemen beat the thief to death.
253. The class monitor took the books to the teacher.
254. The baby was taking milk yesterday.
255. Juliet was clapping her hands.
256. The baby had eaten the porridge.
257. The musician had wound his video tape.
258. The leopard had been chasing the cat.
259. We had been drawing pictures of frogs.
260. The dogs will chase us next week.
261. Ritah will break this glass today.
262. Joseph will be staring at the teacher.
263. The carpenter will be sawing timber from the forest.
264. Does my mother mend my shorts?
265. Do the girls play netball every Sunday?

d) Rewrite the following sentences into the indirect/reported speech.

266. Jane said, “I take these books home every Friday.”
267. “We walk to school on foot every Monday,” they said.
268. The head teacher said, “I am going to Masaka now.”
“I am studying very hard to get a degree,” said the clever boy.

They said, “We have brought our books to this teacher for marking.”

“This dog has bitten this baby today,” the girl said.

“I have been drinking water,” said my sister.

The teacher said, “I have been talking to you about your dressing.”

She said, “I began this journey from my home this morning.”

“I was collecting these books after this lesson,” said the class monitor.

He said, “I shall see him tomorrow.”

“This will take us five minutes only,” the boy said.

She said, “Janet will be lying here tomorrow,”

The sick girl said, “I may not come to school tomorrow.”

“We shall have finished this topic by tomorrow.” They said.

He asked, “Is there anybody in this house now?”

“Was there anybody in the bedroom?” she asked.

The teacher asked, “Are there any books in the cupboard?”

Jamida asked, “Were they going to the hospital this morning?”

They asked, “Must we come with our parents today?”

“Do they drink much beer from this bar everyday?” the parent asked.

He asked her, “Did Mary bring this bag here today?”

“Does Ali eat mutton from this restaurant everyday?” asked Moses.

He inquired, “Has she brought these eggs now?

Odong asked, “Have they taken the medicine to the sick?”

“Can you fix this goalpost here today?” the captain asked.

His uncle asked me, “Will you come here tomorrow to collect this book?”

The teacher asked, “May you come here now?”

The leader asked “What has he done now?”
295. The head teacher asked, “Where is this teacher today?”
296. The man asked, “When are you coming here?”
297. “Who can eat this stale food today?” he asked.
298. “Whose clothes are these?” they asked.
299. My friend asked, “Why shall we take long doing this simple job?”
300. Opio inquired, “Which of these jobs did you prefer last year?”
301. “Whom has he slapped in the face?” she asked.
302. The teacher asked us, “How are you now?”
303. Daddy said, “Run quickly to school now.”
304. “Examine me very closely,” said the patient to the doctor.
305. My sister said, “Don’t come here today!”
306. “Don’t forget to write to me as soon as you arrive,” she said.

e) **Rewrite and punctuate the sentences correctly.**

307. they said we shall carry everything we find in this room
308. don’t laugh at me said the ashamed girl
309. the crew asked where is the ship now
310. the thief was trying said the man to break into this shop yesterday

f) **Rewrite the following sentences into the direct speech.**

310. He told me not to be silly like that day.
311. He asked her whether she had heard some noise the previous day.
312. The head teacher said that those doors there would be removed the following day.

**Rewrite the sentences from the active to the passive voice.**

313. Is George writing an informal letter?
314. Has the baby eaten the food?
315. Have the mosquitoes been biting the child?
316. Did daddy beat the stubborn girl?
317. Were the candidates writing a test?
318. Had the woman driven the car?
319. Had the cat been chasing the rat?
320. Will the duck fly over the roof?
321. Eat this dirty food.
322. Don’t look at me now.
323. Bring that money here tomorrow.
324. Will the girl be mopping the house?
325. Who broke the flower vessel?
326. What will wear off your new shoes?

**Rewrite the following sentences from the passive to the active voice.**

327. The red pen will be being chosen by him.
328. The dogs are chased by Mary.
329. Trees have been felled in the forest by the lumberjacks.
330. My clothes are being sewn by my mother.
331. The lesson will have been begun by them.
332. Tears are cried by the baby.
333. Sweet songs were sung last evening by the choir.
334. The seeds were being sown in the bush by the farmer.
335. The luggage will have been being carried by the porter.
336. The ball is kicked every Saturday by the boys.
337. The assembly has been addressed by the Head teacher.
338. The water is being swum in by Andrew.
339. Malaria fever is being suffered from by our teacher.
340. Problems will have been sought for by the end of this week by the stubborn girl.
341. The young children have been beaten now mother.
342. The driver swam in the lake and was bitten by a snake.
   (Begin: Swimming  ---------)

342. English is spoken by most pupils and it is very easy. (Begin: Spoken --------)

343. Richard first ate food and ran to school. (Begin: Having ---------)
   **Rewrite and change the underlined infinitives into gerunds.**

344. I think it’s no use to try him again.

345. The teacher began to teach us very early.

346. The tailor is quite capable to mend the trousers.

347. He told us to do our work without to talk.

348. A teacher can’t avoid to make any mistake.

349. The police insisted to arrest the thief.

350. My niece objected to be treated like a beggar.

351. The rain prevented me to go to school.

352. The candidates succeeded to pass P.L.E last year.

353. The parent grew tired to wait for the head teacher.

354. Do you mind to receive six strokes for your bad deeds?

355. It’s not good to refuse to respect your parents and teachers.

356. Would you mind to get a free lift to your school?

357. There is no harm to look after an AIDS victim.

358. Your father is looking forward to welcome you to Entebbe Airport.
   **Rewrite and use gerunds as instructed in brackets.**

359. I don’t come late in the morning. (Rewrite and use;---------fond of ---------)

360. We want to pass to P.7. (Begin:----------interested --------)

361. The fishermen refused us to eat fish by poisoning it. (Use:-----deprived ----)

362. Peter is proud to wear good shoes. (Use: ---------of-------------)

363. The patients are going to stay without to eat.
(Use the underlined words as a gerund.)

364. The disciplined boy gets good marks all the time.

   (Rewrite and use; ------ used -------)

365. Bukirwa dodges lessons every Friday. (Rewrite and use; --- accustomed ---)

366. Nakisooka writes very good compositions in English. (Use:-----good at------)

367. I wouldn't like to be treated like an illegitimate child. (Begin: I object to ----)

368. She was dragged as a drunkard. (Begin: She was ashamed --------)

369. My mother thanked me to pass P.L. E. (Rewrite and use; -- congratulated --)

370. The porter can't dig any more. (Rewrite and use; ------- tired -----------)

371. The lady hopes she will receive free things.

   (Rewrite and use; ------- believes -------)

372. The customer grew tired to wait at the shop.

   (Change the underlined words to a gerund)

373. The unfortunate girl managed to carry out an abortion.

   (Rewrite and use; ------- succeeded-----------)

374. My mother managed to prepare supper for us all even though there was no firewood. (Rewrite the sentence using; ----------- succeed --------)

375. I was able to pass to P.7. (Use; --------------capable ------)

376. They thought that Kasolo began the strike.

   (Begin: Kasolo was suspected ----)

**Exclaim each sentence using “What” or “How”.**

377. My brother is tall.

378. Kabusu market will be busy on Monday.

379. Joseph has been very proud.

380. The children have been tolerant to the punishment.

381. Uganda has been a populous country.

382. He is a merciless boy to kill the cat.
383. Sarah was so punctual that she couldn’t be punished.
384. This is an interesting story.
385. Kato will be unhappy tomorrow.
386. I am strong.
387. The aeroplane has fallen into the ocean. The helicopter has fallen into the ocean. (Begin: Either -------)
388. You can hand in your work today. You can hand in your work tomorrow.
   (Use; ----------- either ---------)
389. Peter will bring my books. James will bring my books. (Use; --- or --------)
390. Our teacher writes well using both hands. (Use; ------ either --------)
391. The master-on-duty won’t punish the latecomers. The head teacher won’t punish the latecomers. (Begin: Neither --------)
392. The patient cannot sit. The patient cannot eat anything.
   (Use; -- neither -- nor -)
393. Cats are not harmful animals. Dogs are not harmful animals.
   (Begin: Neither---)
394. My mother is not a mechanic. My father is not a mechanic.
   (Begin: Neither ----)
395. The plates were well washed. The cups were well washed.
   (Use;---- and so-----)
396. Kalina does not respect teachers. Mafene does not respect teachers.
   (Use; ------ and neither -----------)
397. Salma has not come to school. Sandra has not come to school.
   (Use; ----- and nor ----)
398. Opeto finished his homework. He went to sleep. (Begin: After ----------)
399. Robert crossed the road. He was knocked down by a bicycle.
   (Use; --- after ---)
400. The choir sang a good song. The audience clapped hands. (Begin: Before --)
401. They passed the examinations. They were promoted to P.6.
   (Use; -- before ----)

402. Namwanje paid the school fees. The bursar has sent her home.
   (Use;--- but----)

403. The food tasted good. It was burnt. (Begin: Though ------------)

404. The buns got burnt. There wasn't much heat in the oven. (Use; -- though ---)

405. The cakes got spoilt. They had used the preservatives.
   (Begin: Even though---)

406. The bread was not very good. The baker sold many loaves.
   (Use; ---- even though ---)

407. Masaba is not a trained tailor. He makes good designs. (Begin: Although ---)

408. She is poor. She is a happy woman. (Use; ---- although ------)

409. If we go to Mbale, we shall see Mt. Elgon. (Use; ----------- went ---------)

410. Marion will perform well when she works hard. (Use; ---- if --------------)

411. If the baker sold his cakes, he would get a lot of money. (Had--------------)